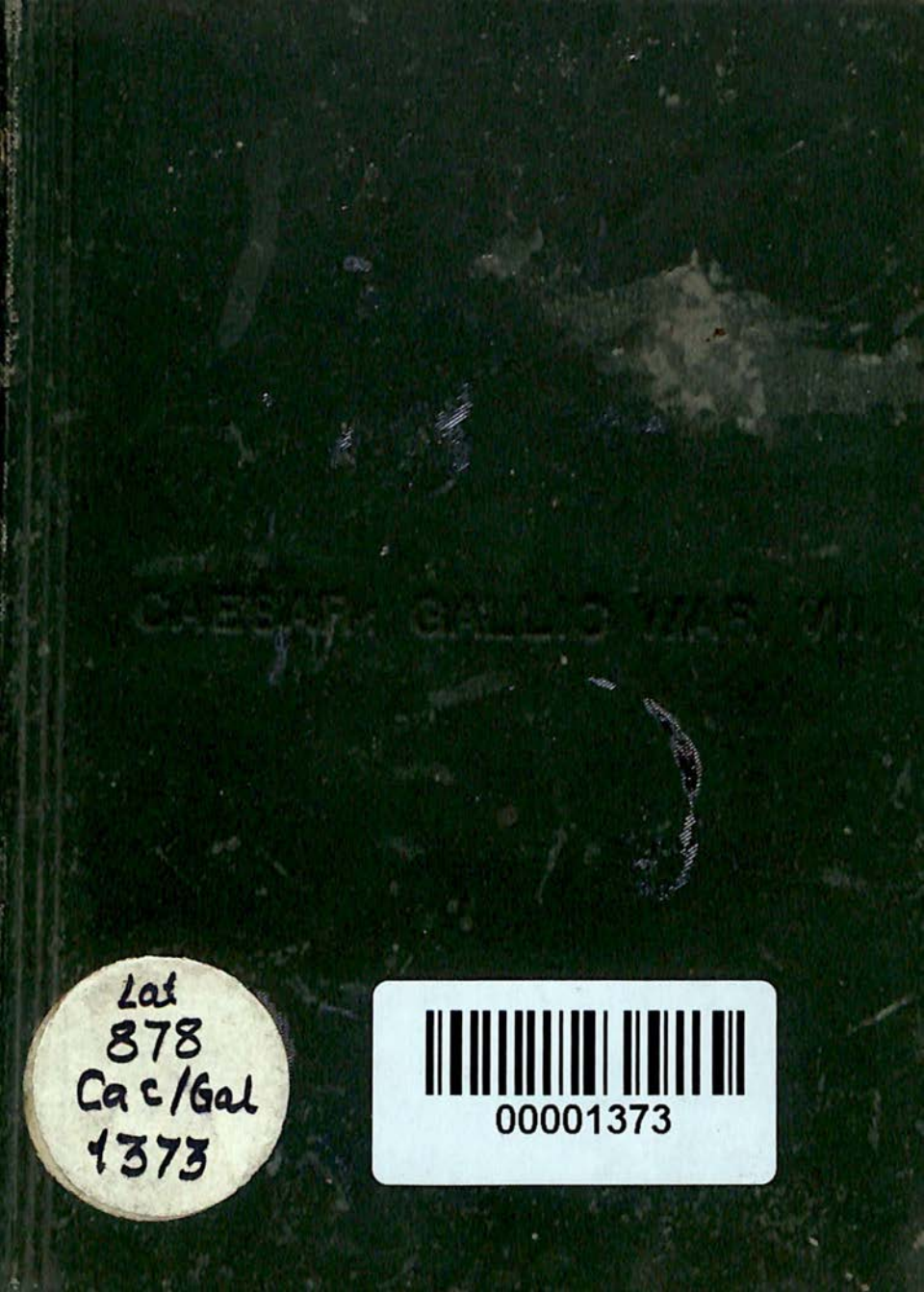

Lat
878
Ca c/Gal
1373
00001373

## The University Tutorial Press.

### LATIN AND GREEK GRAMMARS AND READERS.

**Latin Course, New Junior.** By J. V. Thompson, M.A., and Ll. M. Penn, M.A. 3s. 6d.

**Latin Course, enior.** By A. J. F. Collins, M.A., and A. Robinson, B.A. 3s. 6d.

**Latin Course, Junior.** By B. J. Hayes, M.A., Gold Medallist

Latir A., and

Lati al. By , M.A.,

Latin J. H.

Latin ., and

**Latin Reader, New Junior.** By A. J. Tate, M.A. 2s.

**Latin Reader, Junior.** By E. J. G. Forse, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors.** Edited by A. F. Watt, M.A., and B. J. Hayes, M.A. 2s. 6d.

**Matriculation Latin Construing Book.** By A. F. Watt, M.A., and B. J. Hayes, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s.

**Latin Reader, The Tutorial.** With Vocabulary. 2s. 6d.

**Latin Unseens, Advanced.** Edited by H. J. Maidment, M.A., and T. R. Mills, M.A. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

**Greek Unseens, Advanced.** *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

**Greek Reader, The Tutorial.** By A. Waugh Young, M.A. With Notes and Vocabularies. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.



THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
Town Hall, Bombay.



Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 18 July, 2018

## LATIN AND GREEK EXAMINATION PAPERS, ETC.

**Matriculation Latin Papers** (1903—1913). With Notabilia. 1s. 6d.

**Matriculation Model Answers: Latin.** Together with the Examination Papers from Jan. 1907 to Jan. 1913. 2s.

**Matriculation and Intermediate Greek.** By B. J. HAYES, M.A., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

**Latin Dictionary, The Tutorial.** By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A., Gold Medallist in Classics, late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. *Second Edition.* 6s. 6d.

## ROMAN AND GREEK HISTORY.

**History of Rome, The Tutorial, to 37 A.D.** By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and W. F. MASOM, M.A., Examiner in the University of London. With Maps and Index. *Fourth Edition. Revised and in part Rewritten* by J. F. STOUT, B.A. 3s. 6d. Also in Two Volumes: To 133 B.C., 2s.; 133 B.C. to 37 A.D., 2s.

**A History of Rome from 44 B.C. to 138 A.D.:** The Early Principate. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

**Synopsis of Roman History to 138 A.D.** By W. F. MASOM, M.A., and J. F. STOUT, B.A. *Interleaved.* 2s. 6d.

**History of Greece, The Tutorial.** By W. J. WOODHOUSE, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Sydney, late Craven Fellow in the University of Oxford. 4s. 6d.

**Synopsis of Grecian History to 323 B.C.** By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. *Interleaved.* 2s. 6d.

The University Tutorial Series

Classical Editor

B. J. HAYES, M.A.

VICE-PRINCIPAL OF UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE

# CAESAR

# GALLIC WAR, BOOK VII.

## Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

(INTRODUCTION, TEXT, AND NOTES.)

* *These Volumes contain a complete alphabetical Lexicon.*

AESCHYLUS—Eumenides, 3/6; Persae, 3/6; Prometheus, 2/6; Septem contra Thebas, 3/6.

ARISTOPHANES—Ranae, 3/6.

CAESAR—Civil War, Bk. 1, 1/6; Book 3, 2/6; Gallic War, Bks. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, (each) 1/6; Gallic War, Bk. 1, Ch. 1-29, 1/0; Gallic War, Bk. 7, Ch. 1-68, 1/0; Invasion of Britain (IV. 20-V. 23), 1/6.

CICERO—Ad Atticum, Bk. 4, 3/6; *De Amicitia, 1/6; De Finibus, Bk. 1, 2/6; De Finibus, Bk. 2, 3/6; De Officiis, Bk. 3, 3/6; In Catilinam I.-IV., 2/6; Philippic II., 2/6; Pro Cluentio, 3/6; Pro Lege Manilia, 2/6; Pro Milone, 3/6; Pro Plancio, 3/6; Pro S. Roscio, 2/6; *De Senectute, In Catilinam I., III., Pro Archia, Pro Balbo, Pro Marcello, (each) 1/6.

DEMOSTHENES—Androtion, 4/6.

EURIPIDES—Alcestis, 1/6; Andromache, 3/6; Bacchae, 3/6; Hecuba, 3/6; Hippolytus, 3/6; Iphigenia in Tauris, 3/6; Medea, 2/0.

HERODOTUS—Bk. 3, 4/6; Bk. 4, Ch. 1-144, 4/6; Bk. 6, 2/6; Bk. 8, 3/6.

HOMER—Iliad, Bk. 24, 3/6; Odyssey, Bks. 9, 10, 2/6; Odyssey, Bks. 11, 12, 2/6; Odyssey, Bks. 13, 14, 2/6; Odyssey, Bk. 17, 1/6.

HORACE—Epistles, 4/6; Epodes, 1/6; *Odes, 3/6; Odes (*each Bk.), 1/6; Satires, 3/6.

ISOCRATES—De Bigis, 2/6.

JUVENAL—Satires, 1, 3, 10, 11, 3/6; 1, 3, 4, 3/6; 8, 10, 13, 2/6; 11, 13, 14, 3/6.

LIVY—Bks. 1, 2 (Ch. 1-50), 5, 21, 22, (each) 2/6; Bks. 3, 6, 9, (each) 3/6; Bk. 21, Ch. 1-30, 1/6.

LUCIAN—Charon, Piscator, 3/6.

LYSIAS—Eratosthenes, 2/6.

NEPOS—Hannibal, Cato, Atticus, 1/0.

OVID—Fasti, Bks. 3, 4, 2/6; Bks. 5, 6, 3/6; Heroides, 1-10, 3/6; 1, 5, 12, 1/6; 12, 1/0; Metamorphoses, Bk. 1, 1-150, 1/6; Bk. 3, 1-250, 511-733, 1/6; Bk. 5, 385-550, 1/6; Bks. 11 (410-748), 13, 14, (each) 1/6; Tristia, Bks. 1, 3, (each) 1/6.

PLATO—Crito and Euthyphro, 2/6; Apology, Ion, Laches, Phaedo, (each) 3/6; Euthyphro and Menexenus, 4/6.

SALLUST—Catiline, 1/6.

SOPHOCLES—Ajax, 3/6; Antigone, 2/6; Electra, 3/6.

TACITUS—Agricola, 2/6; Annals, Bk. 1, 2/6; Bk. 2, 2/6; Germania, 2/6; Histories, Bk. 1, 3/6; Bk. 3, 3/6.

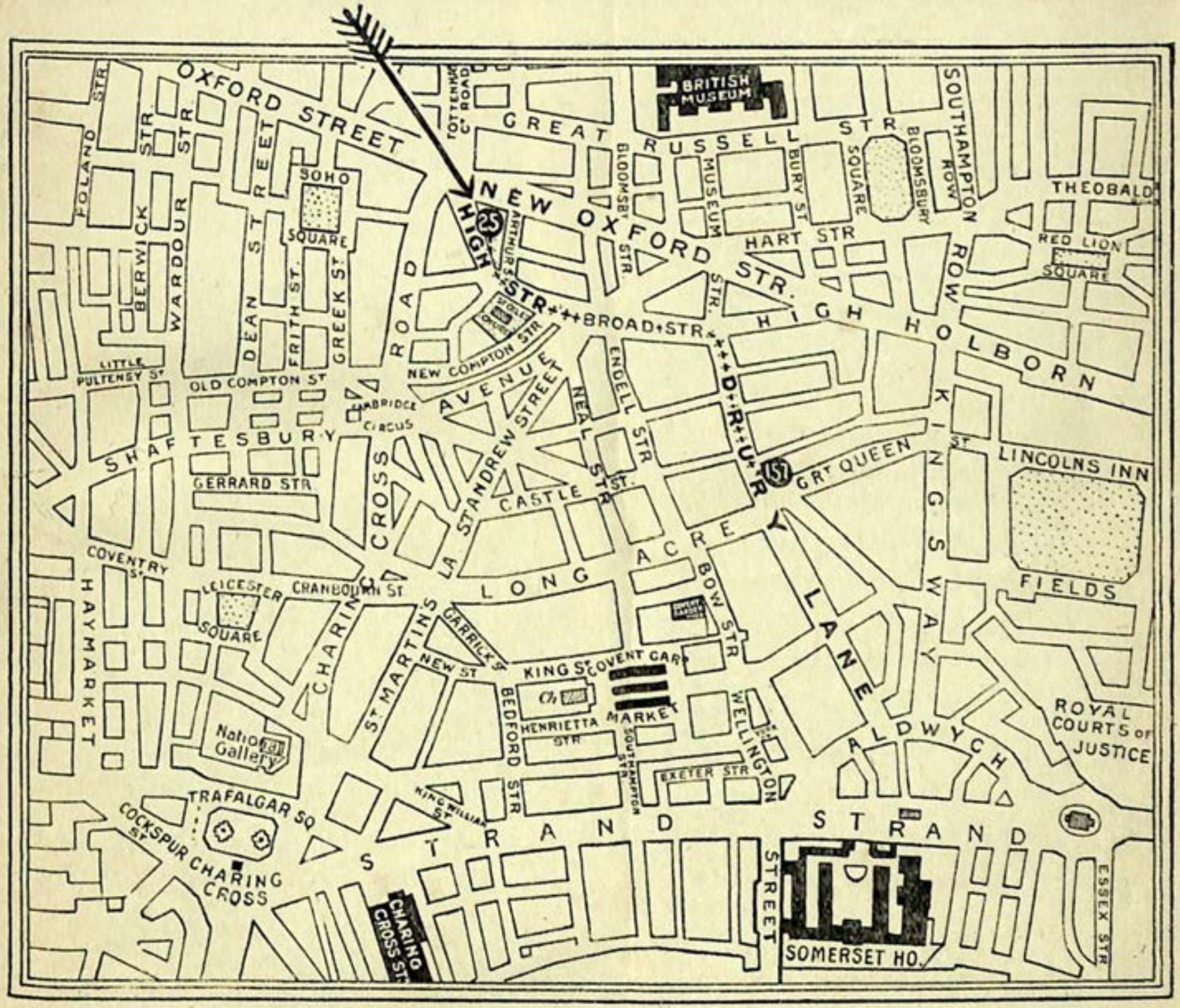
TERENCE—Adelphi, 3/6.

THUCYDIDES—Bk. 7, 3/6.

VERGIL—Aeneid, Books 1-12 (*Books 1-11), (each) 1/6; Bks. 7-10, 3/6; Eclogues, 3/6; Georgics, 4/6; Bks. 1, 2, 3/6; 1, 4, 3/6; 4, 1/6.

XENOPHON—Anabasis, Bk. 1, 1/6; Bk. 4, 1/6; Cyropaedeia, Bk. 1, 1/6; Hellenica, Bk. 3, 1/6; Bk. 4, 1/6; Memorabilia, Bk. 1, 3/6; Oeconomicus, 4/6.

*A detailed Catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.*


OXFORD STREET
POLAND STR
BERWICK STR
WARDOUR STR
DEAN ST
FRITH ST.
GREEK ST
SOHO SQUARE
TOTTENHAM COURT ROAD
NEW OXFORD STR
HIGH
ARTHUR ST
BROAD STR
NEW COMPTON STR
OLD COMPTON ST
LITTLE PULTENEY ST
SHAFTESBURY AVENUE
CABRIDGE CIRCUS
GERRARD STR
COVENTRY ST
HAYMARKET
LEICESTER SQUARE
CRANBOURN ST
CHARING CROSS ROAD
ST MARTINS LA STRAND
GARRICK ST
NEW ST
LONG ACRE
CASTLE ST
NEAL ST
ENDELL STR
BLOOMSBY STR
GREAT RUSSELL STR
MUSEUM
BRITISH MUSEUM
BURY ST
SQUARE
BLOOMSBURY
SOUTHAMPTON ROW
THEOBALDS
RED LION SQUARE
HART STR
HIGH HOLBORN
D·R·U·R
GRT QUEEN ST
KINGSWAY
LINCOLNS INN FIELDS
BOW STR
KING ST
COVENT GAR
HENRIETTA STR
MARKET
BEDFORD STR
SOUTHAMPTON STR
WELLINGTON STR
EXETER STR
ALDWYCH
LANE
ROYAL COURTS of JUSTICE
National Gallery
TRAFALGAR SQ
COCKSPUR ST
CHARING CROSS
KING WILLIAM ST
STRAND
CHARING CROSS ST
STRAND
STREET
SOMERSET HO.
ESSEX STR

REMOVAL TO
25 HIGH ST.,
NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

---

On and after
August 26th, 1912
the address of
The University Tutorial
Press Ld. Warehouse
will be

25 HIGH STREET,
NEW OXFORD STREET,
LONDON, W.C.

See Inside for MAP.

# CAESAR

# GALLIC WAR, BOOK VII.

EDITED BY

A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon.

AUTHOR OF "LATIN COMPOSITION," EDITOR OF VERGIL'S AENEID HORACE' ODES, CICERO DE SENECTUTE, DE AMICITIA, ETC.

AND

W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. and Camb.

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON
EDITOR OF LIVY III., VI., TACITUS' ANNALS, I., II., ETC.

1900

London: W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

DRURY LANE, W.C.

THE ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
LIBRARY

Lat 8 / 8
Cal/Gal

1373

8 DEC. 1962 No
Boy

00001373

GALLIA
CAESARIS AETATE
English Miles
M. GERMANICUM
BRITANNIA
GERMANIA
GALLIA
CISALPINA
ITALIA
HISPANIA CITERIOR
AQUITANIA
PROVINCIA
M. INTERNUM
OCEANUS
Fretum Gallicum
Sequana
Rhenus
Rhodanus
Padus
Alpes
Pyrenaei Montes
Hercynia silva
Arduenna silva
Corsica
ROMA

# INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. In the time of Caesar the Gauls occupied roughly the whole of that part of Europe which lies west of the Rhine and north of the Pyrenees, together with much of Switzerland, and that part of the Italian peninsula which lies to the north of the rivers Rubicon and Macra (thence called Gallia Cisalpina). They had once overrun the land as far as the Tiber, and had settled amongst the ruins of the Etruscan empire; but in the year 218 B.C. the Romans had planted the colonies of Placentia and Cremona as the symbol and safeguard of the final reduction or expulsion of these Cisalpine Gauls. One hundred years later a colony was conducted to Narbo (*Narbonne*) by the Consul Martius Rex, and this town became the capital of the province of Gallia Narbonensis. In the year 58 B.C. those Gauls who were still free were bounded on the south by a line drawn from the Lake of Geneva (*Lacus Lemannus*) to Toulouse (*Tolōsa*), and thereafter by the Pyrenees. Eastward they spread along the whole of the left bank of the Rhine from its mouth to Lake Constance (*L. Venĕtus*); and a line drawn from that point to the head-waters of the Rhone (*Rhodănus*) in Mount St. Gothard, and thence along the valley of that stream to Geneva, completes the frontier. To the north and west they extended to the sea. This wide region was Gallia Comata,—the land of the unconquered Gauls who still, in barbarian fashion, wore their hair unshorn,—so called to distinguish it from Gallia Braccata, identical with Narbonensis, whose inhabitants had learnt to cut their hair, but still retained the national *braccae* or breeches. It is in the former sense that we shall use the name Gallia or Gaul.

**The Gauls and their lands.**

The people whom the Romans named Galli termed themselves Celts, that is "Men of the Forests"; and that portion of Gallia which was least accessible to foreign influences was hence named Celtica. It embraced the whole width of central Gaul from the Seine (*Sequăna*) to the Garonne (*Garumna*). Beyond the Seine lay Belgica, and south of the lower Garonne, as far as the Pyrenees, was Aquitania, which was on the east conterminous with Narbonensis. The Aquitāni were the least important of the peoples of Gallia, and gave little trouble to Caesar. The Belgae, on the other hand, were his most formidable adversaries. The Aduatŭci, between the Maas (*Mōsa*) and Scheldt (*Scaldis*) were certainly German, and so perhaps were the Nervii further to the west; while the Usipĕtes, Tenctēri, and Sugambri, German tribes on the east bank of the Rhine, were continually seeking to cross that river. Higher up the Rhine, along the frontier of Gallia Celtica, there prevailed the same mixture of races; and tribes such as the Vangiŏnes and Nemetes occupied lands alike in Gallia and Germania, while the powerful Treveri, who have left their name to Trèves, were almost as much German as Celtic. Still higher up, the Raurĭci and Helvetii, both Celtic peoples, only maintained themselves by constant warfare against the Germans, whose nomad tribes were included by Caesar in the common name of Suēbi or Suēvi (*i.e.* the Wanderers).

Gallia, though still covered in many parts with dense forests, especially in the northern parts and the Ardennes (*Arduenna Silva*), was yet as a whole a fertile land. Though the tillage of the soil was regarded with contempt, yet, in Celtic Gaul at least, it attained to some importance. But the farther the Gauls were removed from the influence of the Romans, the less inclined were they to these peaceful and sedentary pursuits, which indeed belonged entirely to the non-noble classes. Pastoral farming, and the breeding of cattle, pigs, and horses, were far more affected, and the nobles prided themselves on their horses.

The population was divided into three classes,—nobles, priests, and commoners or serfs. In earlier times each tribe had been governed by a king with the nominal aid of a council of the leading men (*principes*); but these, like

the barons of England, made themselves so powerful as frequently to neutralise, if not to destroy, the royal power. In some cases the king retained his title, but became merely the instrument of the council of nobles; in other cases his office was abolished, and in his place was elected annually a *Vergobrĕtus* or "Dealer of Justice," who was of course controlled by the nobles; and finally, about the time of Caesar's coming, the influence of Roman and Greek example in Narbonensis had produced a sort of democratic movement in many of the nearer tribes, with the result that both the king and the nobles had been overthrown by the commoners. The nobles had gained their influence by reducing the common people, originally free, to the condition of debtors and bondsmen, much as the patricians had done at Rome; while, as there was little law in the land, every poor man felt it advisable to attach himself as a client or retainer to some powerful chieftain who would give him protection in return for his support. Orgetorix the Helvetian had ten thousand such retainers, one-eighth of the whole military strength of the tribe. With such a retinue the noble was raised above the law. From resistance to the king he passed to contempt of the priests; and the latter revenged themselves by assisting the commoners, equally slighted, to overthrow the nobles. These priests were the Druids, an organised clergy who governed the people almost at will by aid of superstition. They professed to control the power of nature, the winds, thunder, and lightning; and they sacrificed human victims to propitiate these powers. They monopolised also all the education of the nation, and formed schools to which were collected the sons of the nobles for instruction. Amongst the subjects of their teaching were astronomy and the doctrine that the soul passes after death into another body.

When Caesar attacked Gaul it was torn with these internal struggles of upper and lower classes one against the other. There was no national unity. Each tribe or clan (*civitas, populus*), and there were more than sixty in Celtica alone, was independent of the others save when forced into vassalage to a more powerful neighbour. The only element of union was the Druidic system, which embraced the British

Islands and all Gaul in a common religious bond, and held every year a great convention near Chartres, to which representatives from the whole Gallic world were invited.

§ 2. Some time before 400 B.C. a horde of Gauls, mostly Senŏnes, left their settlements in Gallia and crossed the Alps into Italy. They occupied the lands afterwards called Cisalpine Gaul; crossed the Po (*Padus*), and by the sack of Melpum (near *Milan*) inflicted a ruinous blow on the Etruscan power (396 B.C.); defeated the Romans at the Battle of the Allia, and burnt Rome itself (390 B.C.). They withdrew again to the north of Italy, where they permanently settled, though they continued to make raids on southern and central Italy. As Rome's power recovered and spread, it came into constant collision with them. So in 361 Manlius won his surname of Torquatus from the *torques*, or gold necklet, which he took from a Gallic chief; in 350 Popilius Laenas defeated them while ravaging Latium; and Valerius earned the name of Corvinus in the next year. There followed fifty years of peace. Then the Etruscans and Umbrians, uniting with the Samnites in their third and last struggle, 298 B.C., summoned the Gauls again to arms. The Battle of Sentinum broke the league, 295 B.C.; and when in 284 B.C. the Senŏnes defeated the Romans at Arretium, the disaster was avenged by the victory of Lake Vadimo, the extirpation of the Senŏnes, and the occupation of their capital, Sena Gallica, as a colony, in 283 B.C. Forty-five years later (238 B.C.) the Boii rose anew, and the trouble, aggravated by a proposal to occupy their lands, culminated, after a disaster at Faesŭlae, in their utter defeat at Telamon (225 B.C.). The remaining tribes of the Cisalpine were subdued by Marcellus, who won from Viridomarus the Insubrian the last of the *Spolia Opima*. They arose once more to assist Hannibal; and after his defeat they still continued the struggle up to 191 B.C., when they made peace, retaining their independence and freedom on condition of protecting Rome's northern frontier.

**Rome and the Gauls.**

Meantime the security of the provinces of the two Spains required that Rome should open a safe land-route to the

Pyrenees. Her ally Massilia (*Marseilles*) was used to maintain this road, which skirted the coast from Pisae to the west, through the lands of the Ligurians. This people resisted stubbornly, but were conquered in detail, and their attacks upon Massilia itself only led to the appearance of the Romans in Transalpine Gaul, 154 B.C., as the protectors of that city.

About thirty years later the two leading tribes of Celtic Gaul, the Aedui (or Haedui) of the central highlands, and the Arverni, who lay in Auvergne to the south of the Aedui, were rivals for the headship of the Gallic states. The Aedui called in the help of Rome, and the Allobroges aided the Arverni. The allied Gauls were crushed on the Isara (*Isère*) by Fabius Maximus, and Cn. Domitius followed up this blow by a second at Vindalium, 121 B.C. The Arverni sued for peace, the condition of which was the recognition of the new province of Gallia Narbonensis, so named from the colony of Narbo. In 109 B.C. the Cimbri and Teutŏni, German tribes, swept over all southern and central Gaul, and all but expelled the Romans by the Battle of Arausio, 105 B.C. Marius and Catulus saved their country by the victories of Aquae Sextiae (*Aix*), 102 B.C. and Vercellae, 101 B.C.

Gallia Narbonensis comprised the whole of the sea-coast from the Alps to the Pyrenees, while it stretched inland as far as Geneva on the one hand and Toulouse (*Tolosa*) on the other. Its frontier was, roughly speaking, the Rhone beyond Lyons, the Cevennes (*Cebenna*), and the Tarn (*Tarnis*). Westward it marched with Aquitania. Here dwelt the Galli Braccati, and the country came to be spoken of as simply *the* Provincia. It is thus that Caesar used that word. The coast had long been colonised by Greek settlers, of whom the Massiliots were the chief; its inhabitants had acquired considerable culture from these settlers, who developed trade, agriculture, and the arts of writing and coining. Hence the rapidity with which they became Romanised. In 58 B.C. the Provincia was scarcely less Roman than was Campania.

Left to themselves the free Gauls still wasted their strength in quarrels. The Arverni united with the Sequăni to resist

the Aedui, who interfered with both; and they called in the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, 71 B.C. Thereupon the Aedui were forced to make peace, as they could get no help from the Romans, despite the prayers of Divitiacus; but Ariovistus found Gaul too attractive to be left. He demanded lands for his followers, invited fresh bodies of Germans across the Rhine, and was in a fair way by 60 B.C. to found a German empire in Gallia itself. His success aroused the German tribes along the entire line of the Rhine. There was every prospect that Gallia would become a German conquest if Rome did not interfere to prevent it. The Romans remembered the attacks of the Cimbri and Teutŏnes: on this occasion it seemed wiser to stay the oncoming barbarians at once. The Rhine offered a natural and defensible frontier; so that, apart from the need of maintaining the coast-route to Spain, the conquest of Gaul was necessary to secure Italy from the Germans. To these reasons of policy was added a third, the known wealth and fertility of Gaul. The commercial world of Rome, the *Equites*, saw in it a new field for money-getting. Lastly Caesar saw here the means of recruiting and training for himself an army sufficiently powerful to counterbalance that of Pompeius, his rival; gold enough to buy support in the Senate and amongst the city-voters; glory which should leave in the shade the victories of Pompeius in Asia.

**Life of Caesar.**

§ 3. Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12th, 100 B.C. His *gens* was one of the oldest and noblest in Rome, but he was connected from the first with the popular or democratic party of Marius and Cinna. He was, by marriage, nephew of the former, son-in-law of the latter. He was too young to take part in the civil troubles of 88-83 B.C.; but when Sulla, the Optimate, seized the dictatorship in the latter year, and restored in full the government of the nobles, he showed his distrust of Caesar by bidding him put away his wife Cornelia, the daughter of L. Cinna, now dead. Caesar refused and fled from Rome, passing ultimately to Asia, where he served with distinction in various small undertakings, and at

Mytilene, in 80 B.C., won the "civic wreath" by saving the life of a fellow *civis*. Sulla died 78 B.C., and Caesar at once returned to Rome, where he devoted himself to the usual course of rhetoric and law-pleading by which the young Romans won their way into public life. His studies took him to Rhodes; he was captured by Cilician pirates *en route*; was ransomed by his friends; and, manning a few vessels, returned to capture and crucify the offenders. About 68 B.C. he came forward more prominently as the champion of the party of Marius, whom he delighted by exhibiting the image of their old leader and by restoring his trophies (65 B.C.). In 68 B.C. he was Quaestor. He won great popularity by his munificence as Aedile, 65 B.C. In 62 B.C. he held the office of Praetor, and next year went as Propraetor to Spain, where he conquered the Lusitani and Celtiberi of the extreme north-west. Returning in 60 B.C. he found Pompeius powerless, and combined with him and Crassus, the leader of the *Equites* or rich merchant class, in the First Triumvirate. This was a coalition to give to each member what he aimed at in politics: Crassus gained privileges for the *Equites*; Pompeius secured lands in Campania for his discharged soldiery; Caesar acquired the consulate of 59 B.C., and a special military command (by the *Lex Vatinia*) for five years in Illyricum and Cisalpine Gaul, with a force of three legions. All these measures were carried by the people in defiance of the Senate; and the latter body itself added to Caesar's commission the Provincia, or Narbonese Gaul, with another legion, owing to the threatening movements of the Helvetii (see § 5) and Ariovistus (§ 2). From 58 to 49 B.C. Caesar was occupied in the conquest of Gaul (§ 5), his five years' command being prolonged by the *Lex Licinia-Pompeia* in 55 B.C. for an equal period. During these years Crassus fell at Carrhae in Parthia, and Pompeius, grown jealous of Caesar, gradually went over to the Senatorial side. His endeavours to deprive Caesar of his command were at once illegal and blundering; Caesar adhered strictly to the law while he could, and only took up arms in 49 B.C. to defend his certain rights and those of the tribunes who supported him. Thus began the Civil War. In two months Pompeius was driven from

Italy and Caesar was master of Rome. The victory of Ilerda secured Spain. The year 48 B.C. saw Pompeius defeated at Pharsalus and assassinated at Alexandria, whither Caesar followed him. He settled Egypt and Asia in 47 B.C., defeated the Senatorial party once more at Thapsus, in Africa, 46 B.C., and finally crushed the last of the Pompeian armies at Munda, in Spain, 45 B.C. Already in 49 B.C. Caesar had been declared Dictator; in 48 B.C. this office was prolonged for an indefinite time. He held the office until his death in 44 B.C., when he was assassinated by a number of his intimate friends, notably Marcus and Decimus Brutus and C. Cassius, March 15th.

§ 4. Besides being a general and a statesman, Caesar was an accomplished man of letters. He wrote works on grammatical subjects and a book on astronomy, in addition to the *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* and *de Bello Civili* which survive. The *Gallic War* was written probably about 50 B.C., and was not composed from day to day. It consists of eight books, of which the last was added by another writer, probably Aulus Hirtius, a friend and partisan of Caesar. The other seven books are the best example which we possess of the Latin language used absolutely without ornamentation as a means to chronicle and describe events. They are like the man's character—straightforward, unhesitating, frank, and rarely guilty of a mistake.

**Caesar's Writings.**

§ 5. Besides the aggressions of the Germans (§ 2), or rather as a result thereof, the peace of the Provincia was threatened in 58 B.C. by the Helvetii, who had determined as early as 61 B.C. to quit their settlements in Switzerland, where the Germans gave them no rest, and to seek more inviting and peaceful homes in western Gaul. They had spent the intervening years in collecting provisions; then, in the early months of 58 B.C., they burnt their towns and villages and assembled at Geneva, to the number of 400,000 souls. The Romans did not desire the passage of this horde through their lands, neither did they wish the Helvetii to vacate their

**Caesar in Gaul.**

position on the frontier, which would be at once occupied by the Germans. The prevention of the migration was the immediate cause of Caesar's hastening to his province. The Helvetii demanded a passage through the lands of the Allobroges, but Caesar blocked the road by an immense series of earthworks, and they eventually made their way out by the passes of the Jura, more to the north. They had already crossed the Arar (*Saône*) before Caesar could bring up his forces to meet them. A fortnight later they were completely defeated at Bibracte (*Autun*), and the survivors were compelled to return to Helvetia. Caesar hastened on to the Rhine Valley and there gave battle to Ariovistus and the Germans, whom he annihilated. In the following year, 57 B.C., he advanced northward into Belgica. The Remi alone sided with him; all the rest of the Belgae united to resist the invader, and among them the German Nervii and Aduatŭci. On the Sabis (*Sambre*) Caesar turned an imminent defeat into a complete triumph. The army of the Nervii was all but extirpated; the Bellovăci, Atrebătes, Suessiōnes, Ambiāni, and others submitted. A coalition of the coast tribes of Armorĭcum (*Brittany*), headed by the Veneti and extending as far as the Menapii, was crushed in a naval battle in 56 B.C.; and by the close of this third campaign the whole of Gaul, including Aquitania, had been reduced.

The Germans of the Lower Rhine were still aggressive, and in the winter of 56-55, 430,000 Usipetes and Tencteri crossed into Gaul. Caesar entered into negotiations with them, but, suspecting them of treachery, suddenly attacked and massacred the entire host. The few who escaped he pursued across the Rhine by means of a bridge which he built near Coblentz, but he effected little on the further bank. The remainder of the year 55 B.C. he spent in an attack on Britain, the refuge of all who feared the Romans. He sailed from Portus Itius and landed with difficulty near Deal in the face of the enemy. A storm, however, prevented his cavalry from landing, and he withdrew after a few days without achieving anything. The invasion was repeated in 54 B.C., but led to no permanent results. A few months later the Gauls, led by Ambiŏrix the Eburonian,

all but captured the winter camp of Caesar's *legatus*, Q. Cicero. Sabinus, another *legatus*, with a legion and a half, was captured and massacred near Aduatŭca (*Tongern*). The Senones, Carnūtes, Nervii, and Trevĕri all revolted unsuccessfully. Sooner or later the insurrection ran through all Belgic Gaul, always with the same result, but it was not till the close of 53 B.C. that peace was thoroughly restored. In 52 B.C. the Arverni rose under Vercingĕtŏrix. All Celtica followed suit, including at last even the Aedui. Vercingĕtŏrix stood siege in Avarĭcum (*Bourges*) and was defeated, withdrawing to Gergōvia (near *Clermont*). Here Caesar was repulsed, and thereupon the Belgae joined the revolt. The Gauls now occupied Alĕsia (*Alise Sainte Reine, Côté d'Or*), and there Caesar blockaded them while other rebels encircled his own lines. The whole force of Gaul was there baffled. Alesia fell (52 B.C.); Vercingetorix surrendered. The Biturīges and Bellovăci held out a little longer, but with Uxellodūnum (near *Cahors*) fell the last of the patriots, 51 B.C.

**The Roman Army.**

§ 6. (i) Under the early kings the Roman Army or *Legio* consisted of three thousand *milites* and three hundred *equites*, together with light-armed troops or *velites*.

(ii) As the population increased new arrangements became necessary, and Servius Tullius is said to have organised four legions from citizens who could afford to serve at their own expense (*Assidui* or *Locupletes*). They fought in a close array or phalanx of six files deep, and, when fully armed, wore a helmet (*cassis*, *galea*), breastplate (*lorīca*), round iron shield (*clipeus*), greaves (*ocreae*), some in the rear ranks wearing, instead of the *clipeus*, the oblong leather shield (*scutum*). Besides these there were light-armed troops (*rorarii*), and twelve centuries of cavalry who now received a sum of money for their expenses.

(iii) The army system gradually developed till in the time of Polybius (150 B.C.) the whole legion of four thousand two hundred men was divided into three classes—known as *Hastati*, *Principes*, and *Triarii* or *Pilani*, according as they fought in the front line, in the second line, or in the reserve.

Each of the first two classes was arranged in ten maniples of one hundred and twenty men each, *Triarii* in ten maniples of sixty men each. Each maniple contained two centuries (*centuriae*), and each century was commanded by a centurion (*centurio*). Besides these there were twelve hundred light-armed skirmishers (*velites*). The three hundred cavalry, attached to each legion, were divided into ten troops (*turmae*) of thirty men each, every *turma* being commanded by three *decuriones*. The allies furnished about an equal number of infantry, and three times the number of horse, for each legion of the Roman troops. These were the *socii* drawn from the Latin colonies and the free federal towns of Italy. Finally, the auxiliary troops (*auxilia*) were raised in the provinces, from non-Italian states.

(iv) C. Marius (106-102 B.C.) did away with all qualifications of property, and threw open the ranks to all who possessed civil status (*capite censi*). The *legio* was divided into ten *cohortes*, each of which combined three maniples,—in all about six thousand men, and all were armed with the heavy javelin (*pilum*). The cavalry was entirely composed of foreign troops, and even in the army of Caesar only about three-quarters of the infantry were Romans.

The rank and standing of the officers and troops were now regulated by personal merit. The ten cohorts of the legion ascended progressively in efficiency and experience from the tenth and last to the first. Each maniple also contained a *centuria prior* and a *centuria posterior*, and the old grades of *princeps*, *hastatus*, *triarius* (or *pilanus*) were now used only as names of rank. So the first centurion of the legion would be the centurion of the *centuria prior* of the *pilani* of *Cohors I.* He was called *primi pili centurio*, or simply *primus pilus*. The most distinguished centurions were called *primi ordines*, and they formed with the general a council of war. The centurion's mark of office was a vine rod (*vitis*), used for chastising subordinates. Each legion had six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*) in part elected by the people. They were mostly young Romans of rank, who accompanied the *imperator* to learn the art of war. Besides these there were *praefecti sociorum* and *praefecti auxiliorum*, commanding respectively the allied troops and auxiliaries.

On days of battle and during his absence Caesar appointed a *legatus*, as a superior officer, for each legion. The army was also accompanied by a *quaestor*.

The period of service for the legionary was sixteen years, at the end of which he might claim his discharge (*missio*) and was *exauctoratus*. If he chose still to serve without demanding *missio*, he was *veteranus*. If he claimed his *missio*, but still remained in the legion, he had various privileges (*immunitates*) and double pay, and was known as *evocatus*.

**Analysis of Book VII.**

§ 7. In the depth of winter the Gauls, angered by the execution of Acco, intrigue against Caesar. The Carnutes lead the revolt by the massacre of Romans at Cenabum. At the same time Vercingetorix seizes the kingship of the Arverni and becomes leader of a national rising (Ch. 1-5). Caesar with great difficulty forces his way across Gaul to his legions at Agedincum, and takes Cenabum and Noviodunum (Ch. 6-13), and Avaricum falls after a lengthy siege (Ch. 14-28). Labienus with four legions is sent west down the Sequana, while Caesar lays siege to Gergovia without success (Ch. 29-51). Upon this the Aedui revolt and are attacked by Caesar, while Labienus, having failed to achieve anything on the Sequana, is recalled (Ch. 52-62). The revolt spreads, but Vercingetorix is worsted in the field and throws himself into Alesia, where he is blockaded (Ch. 63-72). A vast army of Gauls, destined to relieve that place, fails to do so, and Alesia capitulates (Ch. 73-end).

# C. IULI CAESARIS
# DE BELLO GALLICO
## LIBER SEPTIMUS.

QUIETA Gallia Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad 1
conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de
Clodii caede, de senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes
iuniores Italiae coniurarent, dilectum tota provincia habere
instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter per- 2
feruntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli, quod
res poscere videbatur, retineri urbano motu Caesarem neque
in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac 3
impulsi occasione, qui iam ante se populi Romani imperio
subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia
inire incipiunt. Indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis 4
silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de Acconis morte;
posse hunc casum ad ipsos recidere demonstrant; miserantur 5
communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac
praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium faciant et sui capitis
periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. In primis 6
rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandes-
tina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur.
Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente impera- 7
tore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad

8 legiones pervenire possit. Postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a maioribus acceperint, recuperare.

II. His rebus agitatis profitentur Carnutes, se nullum periculum communis salutis causa recusare, principesque
2 ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut iure iurando ac fide sanciatur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, quo more eorum gravissima caerimonia
3 continetur, ne facto initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato iure iurando ab omnibus, qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto ab concilio disceditur.

III. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes Gutruato et Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus, Cenabum signo dato concurrunt civesque Romanos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant, in his Gaium Fufium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae iussu Caesaris
2 praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. Nam, ubi quae maior atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximis
3 tradunt; ut tum accidit. Nam, quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter centum LX.

IV. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus, convocatis
2 suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibetur ab Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam

non existimabant, expellitur ex oppido Gergovia; non 3
destitit tamen atque in agris habet dilectum egentium ac
perditorum. Hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex 4
civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut com-
munis libertatis causa arma capiant, magnisque coactis
copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus,
expellit ex civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur. Dimittit 5
quoque versus legationes; obtestatur, ut in fide maneant. 6
Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turonos,
Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos reliquosque omnes, qui Ocea-
num attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum
defertur imperium. Qua oblata potestate omnibus his 7
civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad
se celeriter adduci iubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas 8
domi quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; in primis
equitatui studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperii 9
severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit.
Nam maiore commisso delicto igne atque omnibus tormentis 10
necat, leviore de causa auribus desectis aut singulis effossis
oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento et magni-
tudine poenae perterreant alios.

V. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu Lucterium 1
Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum
in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Eius 2
adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos
mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias
sustinere possint. Aedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar 3
ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque
subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim 4
venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi
morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntur
legatisque nostris renuntiant, se Biturigum perfidiam veritos 5
revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen
transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsis-

6 terent. Id eane de causa, quam legatis pronuntiarunt,
an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non
7 videtur pro certo esse proponendum. Bituriges eorum
discessu statim cum Arvernis iunguntur.

VI. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam
ille urbanas res virtute Cn. Pompei commodiorem in statum
pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus
2 est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua
3 ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam, si legiones
in provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio
dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet,
ne his quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam
salutem recte committi videbat.

VII. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenos missus eam
2 civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobroges et
Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu
in provinciam Narbonem versus eruptionem facere contendit.
3 Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum
4 existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset,
timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus,
Volcis Arecomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae
5 loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum
ex provincia supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat,
in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire
iubet.

VIII. His rebus comparatis represso iam Lucterio et
remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat,
2 in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos
ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissima nive
iter impediebat, tamen discussa nive sex in altitudinem
pedum atque ita viis patefactis summo militum sudore ad
3 fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus,

quod se Cevenna ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem umquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possint, vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec fama ac nuntii ad Vercingetorigem per- 4
feruntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortunis consulat, neu ab hostibus diripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex 5
Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

IX. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec 1
de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, 2
ut in omnis partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus suis inopinantibus, quam maximis 3
potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nanctus recentem 4
equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones 5
mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. Hac re cognita Ver- 6
cingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

X. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium 1
capiendum afferebat, si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco legiones contineret, ne stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium

videret positum esse; si maturius ex hibernis educeret, ne
2 ab re frumentaria duris subvectionibus laboraret. Praestare visum est tamen omnis difficultates perpeti, quam tanta contumelia accepta omnium suorum voluntates alienare.
3 Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo
4 sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

XI. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque
2 biduo circumvallavit; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, iumenta produci, sescentos
3 obsides dari iubet. Ea qui conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit; ipse, ut quam primum iter faceret, Cenabum
4 Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, quod eo
5 mitterent, comparabant. Huc biduo pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint,
6 militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris contingebat, veritus, ne nocte ex oppido profugerent,
7 duas legiones in armis excubare iubet. Cenabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen
8 transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse iusserat, portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis, quin cuncti caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluse-
9 rant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

XII. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, 1
oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur.
Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in via Noviodunum op- 2
pugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum 3
venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret,
ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, qua pleraque erat
consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet.
Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, 4
centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma
iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus
est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul 5
atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt,
clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum com-
plere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione 6
Gallorum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent,
gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes in-
columes receperunt.

XIII. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium 1
equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites
circiter cccc submittit, quos ab initio habere secum in-
stituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt 2
atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen re-
ceperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti
comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatam exis-
timabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt.
Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod 3
erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum
atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est, quod eo oppido
recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum
confidebat.

XIV. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellauno- 1
duni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis suos ad concilium convocat.
Docet, longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea 2

gestum sit: omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabula-
3 tione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile,
quod equitatu ipsi abundent et quod anni tempore suble-
4 ventur. Pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos
hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus
5 deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris com-
moda neglegenda: vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc
spatio a Boia quoque versus, quo pabulandi causa adire
6 posse videantur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere,
quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus sub-
7 leventur; Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno
8 periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse,
ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis
9 bellum geri non possit. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere,
quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo
tuta, neu suis sint ad detrectandam militiam receptacula
neu Romanis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque
10 tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo
illa gravius aestimare, liberos, coniuges in servitutem abs-
trahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

XV. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata, uno die
2 amplius XX urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem in
reliquis fit civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia con-
spiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant,
tamen hoc sibi solacii proponebant, quod se prope explorata
3 victoria celeriter amissa reciperaturos confidebant. De-
liberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret
4 an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges,
ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae praesidio
et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere coge-
5 rentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope
ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum
6 habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia,
dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente et pre-

cibus ipsorum et misericordia volgi. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

XVI. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus sub- 1
sequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum
ab Avarico longe milia passuum XVI. Ibi per certos ex- 2
ploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum
agerentur, cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat.
Omnis nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat 3
dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adorie-
batur magnoque incommodo afficiebat, etsi, quantum ratione
provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis tem-
poribus diversisque itineribus iretur.

XVII. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar, 1
quae intermissa a flumine et a paludibus aditum, ut supra
diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas
agere, turres duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare
loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentaria Boios atque 2
Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo
studio agebant, non multum adiuvabant, alteri non magnis
facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter,
quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei 3
frumentariae affecto exercitu tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentia
Aeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque eo, ut complures
dies frumento milites caruerint et pecore ex longinquioribus
vicis adacto extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen
vox est ab iis audita populi Romani maiestate et superio-
ribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere 4
singulas legiones appellaret et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent,
se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne
id faceret, petebant: sic se complures annos illo imperante 5
meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent, nusquam infecta
re discederent: hoc se ignominiae laturos loco, si inceptam 6
oppugnationem reliquissent; praestare omnes perferre 7

acerbitates, quam non civibus Romanis, qui Cenabi perfidia
8 Gallorum interissent, parentarent. Haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

XVIII. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum
2 venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis media nocte
3 silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias
4 omnis in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri iussit.

XIX. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat
2 non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle interruptis pontibus Galli fiducia loci continebant generatimque distributi in civitates omnia vada ac saltus eius paludis obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani
3 perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore, ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimaret, qui iniquitatem condicionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare
4 cognosceret. Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam;
5 quos cum sic animo paratos videat, ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquitatis condemnari
6 debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. Sic

milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit.

XX. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis 1
insimulatus, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta opportunitate et celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito 2
aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit: Quod castra 3
movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipsa munitione defenderet; equitum vero 4
operam neque in loco palustri desiderari debuisse et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti. Summam imperii se con- 5
sulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae, si alicuius 6
indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere et virtutem despicere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi turpiter se in castra receperint. Imperium se ab Caesare per proditionem 7
nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata; quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. Haec ut intellegatis, inquit, 8
a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites. Pro- 9
ducit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vinculisque excruciaverat. Hi iam ante 10
edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent;

11 simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam vires suffi-
cere cuiusquam nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque
statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi pro-
12 fecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. "Haec," inquit, "a
me," Vercingetorix, "beneficia habetis, quem proditionis
insimulatis; cuius opera sine vestro sanguine tantum
exercitum victorem fame consumptum videtis; quem turpiter
se ex fuga recipientem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat,
a me provisum est."

XXI. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis
concrepat, quod facere in eo consuerunt, cuius orationem
approbant: summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de
eius fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari
2 posse. Statuunt, ut x milia hominum delecta ex omnibus
3 copiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem
salutem committendam censent, quod penes eos, si id oppidum
retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intellegebant.

XXII. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cuius-
que modi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus sol-
lertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab
2 quoque traduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falces
avertebant, quas, cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus
reducebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius,
quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus
3 cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. Totum autem
murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has
4 coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptio-
nibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos
in opere adoriebantur et nostrarum turrium altitudinem,
5 quantum has cotidianus agger expresserat, commissis suarum
turrium malis adaequabant et apertos cuniculos praeusta et
praeacuta materia et pice fervefacta et maximi ponderis
saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

XXIII. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. 1
Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis
distantes inter se binos pedes in solo collocantur. Hae 2
revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur, ea autem,
quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarci-
untur. His collocatis et coagmentatis alius insuper ordo 3
additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur neque inter se
contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis singulae
singulis saxis interiectis arte contineantur. Sic deinceps 4
omne opus contexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur.
Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est 5
alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines
servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam
habet opportunitatem, quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete
materia defendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos
plerumque introrsus revincta neque perrumpi neque distrahi
potest.

XXIV. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione milites, 1
cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardarentur,
tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus
XXV aggerem latum pedes CCCXXX, altum pedes LXXX ex-
struxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret et 2
Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubaret militesque horta-
retur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur,
paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fumare
aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant, eodemque 3
tempore toto muro clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque
latere turrium eruptio fiebat; alii faces atque aridam 4
materiam de muro in aggerem eminus iaciebant, picem
reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant, ut,
quo primum curreretur aut cui rei ferretur auxilium, vix
ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod instituto Caesaris semper 5
duae legiones pro castris excubabant pluresque partitis
temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii

eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad restinguendum concurreret.

XXV. Cum in omnibus locis consumpta iam reliqua parte noctis pugnaretur semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod deustos pluteos turrium videbant nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant, semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positam arbitrarentur, accidit inspectantibus nobis, quod dignum
2 memoria visum praetereundum non existimavimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manus sebi ac picis traditas glaebas in ignem e regione turris proiciebat: scorpione ab
3 latere dextro traiectus exanimatusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis unus iacentem transgressus eodem illo munere fungebatur; eadem ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato alteri
4 successit tertius et tertio quartus, nec prius ille est a propugnatoribus vacuus relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni ex parte summotis hostibus finis est pugnandi factus.

XXVI. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante
2 et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentio noctis conati non magna iactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romanos ad in-
3 sequendum tardabat. Iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederent, quos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium
4 infirmitas impediret. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericor-

diam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

XXVII. Postero die Caesar promota turri directisque operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legionibusque intra castra in occulto expeditis, cohortatus, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis, qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt.

XXVIII. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque deiecti in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu petiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. Sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. Denique ex omni numero, qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. Quos ille multa iam nocte silentio ex fuga excepit, veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et misericordia volgi seditio oreretur, ut, procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum, disparandos

deducendosque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

XXIX. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne
2 perturbarentur incommodo. Non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppug-
3 nationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. Errare, si qui in
4 bello omnis secundos rerum proventus exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet, sed factum imprudentia Biturigum et nimia obsequentia reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur.
5 Id tamen se celeriter maioribus commodis sanaturum.
6 Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit
7 obsistere; idque se prope iam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

XXX. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo, neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis
2 fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum, post
3 deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario
4 dignitas incommodo accepto in dies augebatur. Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmatione de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo consternati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent.

XXXI. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix 1
animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque
eas donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos 2
homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdola
aut amicitia facillime capere posset. Qui Avarico ex- 3
pugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul, 4
ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum
numerum militum civitatibus, quem et quam ante diem in
castra adduci velit, sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat
permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet.
His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur.
Interim Teutomatus Ollovicónis filius, rex Nitiobrogum,
cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum
magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania con-
duxerat ad eum pervenit.

XXXII. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus 1
summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus
nanctus exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Iam 2
prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum
bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive
eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere
posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum,
ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo 3
esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus anti-
quitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere
consuessent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum
legibus creatum esse dicat. Horum esse alterum Con- 4
victolitavem, florentem et illustrem adulescentem, alterum
Cotum, antiquissima familia natum atque ipsum hominem
summae potentiae et magnae cognationis, cuius frater
Valetiacus proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit.
Civitatem esse omnem in armis; divisum senatum, divisum 5
populum, suas cuiusque eorum clientelas. Quod si diutius 6
alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis

confligat; id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

XXXIII. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus confideret, 2 auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit et, quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de iure aut de legibus eorum deminuisse videretur, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se Decetiam evocavit. 3 Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia vivo utroque non solum magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Cotum imperium deponere coëgit, Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis intermissis magistratibus esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

XXXIV. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se devicta Gallia exspectarent equitatumque omnem et peditum milia X sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa dis- 2 poneret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit, sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elaver duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. 3 Qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu 1
fereque e regione castris castra poneret, dispositis explora-
toribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent,
erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem 2
aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante
autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id 3
accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum
pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero
die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias 4
cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, distractis
quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare vide-
retur. His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum 5
iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat in castra perven-
tum, isdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat,
pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque 6
traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias
revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam volun- 7
tatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam 1
pervenit equestrique eo die proelio levi facto, perspecto
urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnis aditus
difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione
non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam
expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum positis 2
mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum
civitatium copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi
collibus occupatis, qua dispici poterat, horribilem speciem
praebebat principesque earum civitatium, quos sibi ad 3
consilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce cotidie ad se
convenire iubebat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid
administrandum videretur, neque ullum fere diem intermit- 4
tebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in
quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, perspiceret. Erat e 5
regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie

munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione libera prohibi-
6 turi hostes videbantur. Sed is locus praesidio ab his non
7 nimis firmo tenebatur. Tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, prius, quam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium incursu etiam singuli commeare possent.

XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecunia cum quibusdam adulescentibus colloquitur, quorum erat princeps Litaviccus atque eius fratres, amplissima familia nati
2 adulescentes. Cum his praemium communicat hortaturque,
3 ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint. Unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta
4 locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. Esse non nullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi
5 libertati tribuere. Cur enim potius Aedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem disceptatorem, quam Romani ad
6 Aeduos veniant? Celeriter adulescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse
7 non confidebant. Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua qua ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

XXXVIII. Litaviccus accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter XXX ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito

militibus lacrimans, "Quo proficiscimur," inquit, "milites? 2
Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes
civitatis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis,
ab Romanis indicta causa interfecti sunt. Haec ab ipsis 3
cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt; nam ego, fratribus
atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor,
quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare." Producuntur hi, quos ille 4
edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus
pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt: equites Aeduorum 5
interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos
se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media
caede fugisse. Conclamant Aedui et Litaviccum obsecrant, 6
ut sibi consulat. "Quasi vero," inquit ille, "consilii sit 7
res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum
Arvernis nosmet coniungere. An dubitamus, quin nefario 8
facinore admisso Romani iam ad nos interficiendos con-
currant? Proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur
eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt, atque hos
latrones interficiamus." Ostendit cives Romanos, qui eius 9
praesidii fiducia una erant; magnum numerum frumenti
commeatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit.
Nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit, eodem mendacio 10
de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut
simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas iniurias persequantur.

XXXIX. Eporedorix Aeduus, summo loco natus 1
adulescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus,
pari aetate et gratia, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab
Divitiaco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam digni-
tatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant nomi-
natim ab eo evocati. His erat inter se de principatu 2
contentio, et in illa magistratuum controversia alter pro
Convictolitavi, alter pro Coto summis opibus pugnaverant.
Ex his Eporedorix cognito Litavicci consilio media fere 3
nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem

pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani
4 deficere; quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniunxerint, quorum salutem neque propinqui neglegere neque civitas levi momento aestimare posset.

XL. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equi-
2 tatumque omnem ex castris educit; nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur; C. Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus
3 castris praesidio relinquit. Fratres Litavicci cum comprehendi iussisset, paulo ante repperit ad hostes fugisse.
4 Adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore itineris labore permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus progressus milia passuum XXV, agmen Aeduorum conspicatus, immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur atque impedit, interdicitque omnibus,
5 ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari
6 suosque appellare iubet. His cognitis et Litavicci fraude perspecta Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare, et
7 proiectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit.

XLI. Caesar nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis exercitui ad quietem datis castra
2 ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites a Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. Summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum crebro integri defessis succederent nostrosque assiduo labore defetigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset
3 isdem in vallo permanendum. Multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda

magno usui fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessu eorum 4
duabus relictis portis obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo
addere et se in posterum diem similemque casum apparare.
His rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum 5
solis in castra pervenit.

XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis 1
nuntiis ab Litavicco acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum
spatium relinquunt. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia 2
et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata,
ut levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta. Bona 3
civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem
abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem proclinatam Convictolitavis 4
plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad
sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum 5
militum iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido
Cabillono educunt; idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi
causa ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti 6
omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctem-
que obsident; multis utrimque interfectis maiorem multi-
tudinem armatorum concitant.

XLIII. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in 1
potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil
publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis
direptis decernunt, Litavicci fratrumque bona publicant, 2
legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec 3
faciunt reciperandorum suorum causa; sed contaminati
facinore et capti compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res
ad multos pertinebat, timore poenae exterriti consilia clam
de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus
sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen, quam 4
mitissime potest, legatos appellat; nihil se propter inscien-
tiam levitatemque volgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque
de sua in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. Ipse maiorem 5

Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur. consilia inibat, quem ad modum a Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

XLIV. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei gerendae. Nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae
2 multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluebat.
3 Constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc locum silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram
4 partem oppidi; vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec iam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et
5 pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

XLV. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas de media nocte; imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius
2 omnibus locis vagarentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci deque his strāmenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum
3 specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur.
4 Longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra, neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari
5 poterat. Legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat
6 Augetur Gallis suspicio, atque omnes illo ad munitionem
7 copiae traducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis

militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit, ostendit; in primis 8
monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat 9
incommodi, proponit; hoc una celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His rebus expositis signum 10
dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

XLVI. Oppidi murus ab planicie atque initio ascensus 1
recta regione, si nullus amfractus intercederet, mille passus
CC aberat; quicquid huc circuitus ad molliendum clivum 2
accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. A medio fere colle 3
in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, praeduxerant Galli atque inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites dato signo celeriter ad 4
munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

XLVII. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar 1
receptui cani iussit legionisque decimae, quacum erat, continuo signa constituit. Ac reliquarum legionum milites 2
non exaudito tubae sono, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur; sed elati spe celeris 3
victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute consequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi

fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. 4 Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. 5 Matres familiae de muro vestem argentumque iactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne 6 a mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent; non nullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. 7 L. Fabius, centurio legionis VIII., quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis sublevatus murum ascendit, hos ipse rursus singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

XLVIII. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo 2 contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. 3 Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matres familiae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberos- 4 que in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aequa contentio; simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defetigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

XLIX. Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle 2 ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco

depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, 3 ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

L. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et 1 numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miserat. Hi similitudine 2 armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris umeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatorum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore 3 Lucius Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitabantur. Marcus 4 Petronius, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos data facultate vobis consulite." Simul in medios hostis 5 irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta paulum summovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis, "Frustra," inquit, "meae 6 vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite." Ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

LI. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centurionibus 1 amissis deiecti sunt loco. Sed intolerantius Gallos insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus XIII. legionis co- 2 hortes exceperunt, quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. Legiones, 3 ubi primum planiciem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes

4 signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

LII. Postero die Caesar contione advocata temeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicavissent, quo procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent neque ab tribunis
2 militum legatisque retineri potuissent. Exposuit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in
3 contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset, tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de
4 victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent; nec minus se ab milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

LIII. Hac habita contione et ad extremam orationem confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectione cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco constituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilo magis in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio atque secundo in castra
3 exercitum reduxit. Cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans in Aeduos movit
4 castra. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus, tertio die ad flumen Elaver pontes reficit eoque exercitum traducit.

LIV. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Aeduis appellatus discit, cum omni equitatu Litaviccum ad sollici-

tandos Aeduos profectum: opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi multis iam rebus perfidiam 2
Aeduorum perspectam habebat atque horum discessu admaturari defectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non constituit, ne aut inferre iniuriam videretur aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. Discedentibus his 3
breviter sua in Aeduos merita exposuit, quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatos agris, omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia extortis, et quam in fortunam quamque in 4
amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His datis mandatis eos ab se dimisit.

LV. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduorum ad ripas 1
Ligeris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides 2
Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat: huc 3
magnum numerum equorum huius belli causa in Italia atque Hispania coëmptum miserat. Eo cum Eporedorix 4
Viridomarusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litaviccum Bibracti ab Aeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavim magistratum magnamque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia concilianda publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. Itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus, quique 5
eo negotiandi causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt, obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magis- 6
tratum deducendos curaverunt, oppidum, quod a se teneri 7
non posse iudicabant, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt, frumenti quod subito potuerunt, navibus avexerunt, reliquum 8
flumine atque incendio corruperunt. Ipsi ex finitimis re- 9
gionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas

Ligeris disponere equitatumque omnibus locis iniciendi timoris causa ostentare coeperunt, si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere aut adductos inopia in provinciam ex-
10 pellere possent. Quam ad spem multum eos adiuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

LVI. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret.
2 Nam ne commutato consilio iter in provinciam converteret, ut nemo non tum quidem necessario faciendum existimabat, cum infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons Cevenna viarumque difficultas impediebat, tum maxime, quod abiuncto Labieno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat,
3 vehementer timebat. Itaque admodum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis contra omnium opinionem
4 ad Ligerem venit, vadoque per equites invento pro rei necessitate opportuno, ut bracchia modo atque umeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo
5 aspectu perturbatis, incolumem exercitum traduxit, frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, repleto his rebus exercitu iter in Senones facere instituit.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agedinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum IIII legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum
2 est in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt,
3 Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei
4 militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum animadvertisset, perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam

atque illum omnem locum magno opere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

LVIII. Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque 1
aggere paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur.
Postquam id difficilius confieri animadvertit, silentio e 2
castris tertia vigilia egressus eodem, quo venerat, itinere
Metiosedum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senonum, in insula 3
Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetia diximus.
Deprensis navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque con- 4
iunctis atque eo militibus iniectis et rei novitate perterritis
oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine
contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superiori- 5
bus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum traducit et secundo
flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes re cognita 6
ab iis, qui Metiosedo fugerant, Lutetiam incendi pontesque
eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsi profecti a palude ad ripas
Sequanae e regione Lutetiae contra Labieni castra considunt.

LIX. Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur, 1
iam de Aeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu
rumores afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum
itinere et Ligeri Caesarem inopia frumenti coactum in
provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem 2
defectione Aeduorum cognita, qui iam ante erant per se
infideles, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coe-
perunt. Tum Labienus tanta rerum commutatione longe 3
aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intel-
legebat, neque iam, ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostes 4
lacesseret, sed, ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum re-
duceret, cogitabat. Namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, 5
quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis,
instabant, alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo
exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedi-

6 mentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatibus obiectis ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

LX. Sub vesperum consilio convocato, cohortatus, ut ea quae imperasset, diligenter industrieque administrarent, naves, quas Metiosedo deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attribuit et prima confecta vigilia IIII milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi ibique se exspectari iubet. 2 Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse 3 existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit: quinque eiusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis 4 adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres; has magno sonitu remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulo silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appelli iusserat.

LXI. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur; 2 exercitus equitatusque equitibus Romanis administrantibus, 3 quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur, in castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari, et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine sonitumque remorum in eadem parte exaudiri, et paulo infra milites navibus trans- 4 portari. Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant, tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos defectione Aeduorum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes 5 distribuerunt. Nam praesidio e regione castrorum relicto et parva manu Metiosedum versus missa, quae tantum progrediatur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

LXII. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati et 1
hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut 2
suae pristinae virtutis et secundissimorum proeliorum re-
tinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductu
saepe numero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existi-
marent, dat signum proelii. Primo concursu ab dextro 3
cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque
in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima 4
legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transfixi telis con-
cidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat
suspicionem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulo- 5
genus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. Incerto etiam 6
nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset
nuntiatum, quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum
hostium legionem ostenderunt signaque intulerunt. Ne eo 7
quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes
interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus.
At ii, qui praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relicti, cum 8
proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt collem-
que ceperunt, neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum
sustinere potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, 9
quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt inter-
fecti. Hoc negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, 10
ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relicta erant; inde die III.
cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

LXIII. Defectione Aeduorum cognita bellum augetur. 1
Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur; quantum 2
gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates
nituntur; nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, 3
horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a Vercinge- 4
torige Aedui, ut ad se veniat rationesque belli gerendi
communicet. Re impetrata contendunt, ut ipsis summa 5
imperii tradatur, et re in controversiam deducta totius
Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Eodem conveniunt 6

undique frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur; ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem.
7 Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treveri afuerunt, illi, quod amicitiam Romanorum sequebantur, Treveri, quod aberant longius et ab Germanis premebantur, quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent.
8 Magno dolore Aedui ferunt se deiectos principatu, queruntur fortunae commutationem et Caesaris indulgentiam in se requirunt, neque tamen suscepto bello suum consilium
9 ab reliquis separare audent. Inviti summae spei adulescentes Eporedorix et Viridomarus Vercingetorigi parent.

LXIV. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diemque ei rei constituit. Huc omnes equites, XV milia numero,
2 celeriter convenire iubet. Peditatu, quem antea habuerat, se fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum aut in acie dimicaturum, sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Ro-
3 manos prohibere, aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, qua rei familiaris iactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant.
4 His constitutis rebus Aeduis Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; huc addit equites
5 DCCC. His praeficit fratrem Eporedorigis bellumque inferri
6 Allobrogibus iubet. Altera ex parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum Arecomicorum depopulandos mittit.
7 Nihilo minus clandestinis nuntiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello rese-
8 disse sperabat. Horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicetur.

LXV. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa provincia ab Lucio
2 Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii sua

sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur et Gaio Valerio Donnotauro, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis intra oppida ac muros compelluntur. Allobroges crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis 3
praesidiis magna cum cura et diligentia suos fines tuentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat 4
et interclusis omnibus itineribus nulla re ex provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consuerant. Eorum adventu, quod 5
minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit Germanisque distribuit.

LXVI. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex 1
Arvernis equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. Magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in 2
Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter milia passuum x ab Romanis trinis castris Vercingetorix consedit convocatisque ad concilium praefectis equitum venisse 3
tempus victoriae demonstrat: fugere in provinciam Romanos Galliaque excedere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinen- 4
dam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici: maioribus enim coactis copiis reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. Proinde in agmine impeditos adoriantur. Si pedites suis auxilium ferant 5
atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat, relictis impedimentis suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum 6
progredi modo extra agmen audeat, ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. Id quo maiore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum.

7 Conclamant equites, sanctissimo iure iurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset.

LXVII. Probata re atque omnibus iure iurando adactis, postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu duae se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una a primo agmine iter 2 impedire coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripertito divisum contra hostem ire iubet. 3 Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; 4 impedimenta inter legiones recipiuntur. Si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui iubebat; quae res et hostes ad insequendum tardabat et nostros spe auxilii con- 5 firmabat. Tandem Germani ab dextro latere summum iugum nancti hostes loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus copiis con- 6 sederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. Qua re animadversa reliqui, ne circumirentur, veriti se fugae 7 mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes. Tres nobilissimi Aedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat, et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavicci pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Aedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

LXVIII. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit. 2 Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo 3 agmine interfectis altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Per-

specto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem militēs circumvallare instituit.

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summo admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur; cuius collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina subluebant. Ante id oppidum planicies circiter milia passuum III in longitudinem patebat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles mediocri interiecto spatio pari altitudinis fastigio oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant fossamque et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant. Eius munitionis, quae ab Romanis instituebatur, circuitus XI milia passuum tenebat. Castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta, quibus in castellis interdiu stationes ponebantur, ne qua subito eruptio fieret; haec eadem noctu excubitoribus ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

LXX. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in ea planicie, quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patere supra demonstravimus. Summa vi ab utrisque contenditur. Laborantibus nostris Caesar Germanos summittit legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua subito irruptio ab hostium peditatu fiat. Praesidio legionum addito nostris animus augetur; hostes in fugam coniecti se ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coacervantur. Germani acrius usque ad munitiones sequuntur. Fit magna caedes; non nulli relictis equis fossam transire et maceriam transcendere conantur. Paulum legiones Caesar, quas pro vallo constituerat, promoveri iubet. Non minus, qui intra munitiones erant, perturbantur Galli: veniri ad se confestim existimantes ad arma conclamant; non nulli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix

iubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis Germani sese recipiunt.

LXXI. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu
2 dimittere. Discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eorum civitatem adeant omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre
3 possint, ad bellum cogant. Sua in illos merita proponit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se optime de communi libertate meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. Quod si indiligentiores fuerint, milia hominum
4 delecta LXXX una secum interitura demonstrat. Ratione inita exigue dierum se habere XXX frumentum, sed paulo
5 etiam longius tolerare posse parcendo. His datis mandatis, qua nostrum opus erat intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio
6 equitatum mittit. Frumentum omne ad se referri iubet,
7 capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit; pecus, cuius magna erat copia ab Mandubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit, frumentum parce et paulatim metiri instituit.
8 Copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum
9 recepit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum parat administrare.

LXXII. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum XX directis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem
2 pateret, quantum summae fossae labra distarent. Reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa passus quadringentos reduxit, id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus nec facile totum corpus corona militum cingeretur, ne de improviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, aut interdiu tela in nostros operi destinatos
3 conicere possent. Hoc intermisso spatio duas fossas quindecim pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit; quarum interiorem campestribus ac demissis locis aqua ex flumine

derivata complevit. Post eas aggerem ac vallum XII pedum 4
exstruxit. Huic loricam pinnasque adiecit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent, et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

LXXIII. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari 1
et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progrediebantur; ac non numquam opera nostra Galli temptare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. Quare ad 2
haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum delibratis ac praeacutis cacuminibus perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi et ab 3
infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines coniuncti inter se atque implicati; quo 4
qui intraverant, se ipsi acutissimis vallis induebant. Hos cippos appellabant. Ante quos obliquis ordinibus in quin- 5
cuncem dispositis scrobes tres in altitudinem pedes fodiebantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. Huc 6
teretes stipites feminis crassitudine ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demittebantur ita, ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terra eminerent; simul confirmandi et stabiliendi causa 7
singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. Huius generis octoni ordines ducti ternos 8
inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. Ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis 9
infixis totae in terram infodiebantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

LXXIV. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam 1
potuit aequissimas pro loci natura, XIV milia passuum

complexus paris eiusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat equitatus discessu, munitionum
2 praesidia circumfundi possent; ne autem cum periculo ex castris egredi cogatur, dierum triginta pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum iubet.

LXXV. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli concilio principum indicto non omnes eos, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique ex civitate imperandum, ne tanta multitudine confusa nec moderari nec discernere suos nec
2 frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Aeduis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiavis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, milia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernis adiunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis, Gabalis, Vellaviis, qui sub
3 imperio Arvernorum esse consuerunt; Sequanis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena milia; Bellovacis X; octona Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; sena Andibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nerviis, Morinis; Nitiobrogibus quinque milia; Aulercis Cenomanis totidem; Atrebatibus IV; Veliocassis totidem; Lemovicibus et Aulercis Eburovicibus terna;
4 Rauricis et Boiis bina; XXX universis civitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eorum consuetudine Aremoricae appellantur, quo sunt in numero Curiosolites, Redones,
5 Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Lexobii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicebant neque cuiusquam imperio obtemperaturos; rogati tamen ab Commio pro eius hospitio II milia una miserunt.

LXXVI. Huius opera Commii, ut antea demonstravimus, fideli atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem eius immunem

esse iusserat, iura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinos attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae consensio fuit 2
libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae,
ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoria moverentur,
omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum incumberent.
Coactis equitum VIII milibus et peditum circiter CCL, haec 3
in Aeduorum finibus recensebantur, numerusque inibatur,
praefecti constituebantur. Commio Atrebati, Viridomaro 4
et Eporedorigi Aeduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. His delecti
ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam 5
proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum
modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur,
praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione
pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque
cernerentur.

LXXVII. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita 1
die, qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, consumpto omni
frumento inscii, quid in Aeduis gereretur, concilio coacto
de exitu suarum fortunarum consultabant. Ac variis 2
dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditionem, pars, dum vires
suppeterent, eruptionem censebat, non praetereunda oratio
Critognati videtur propter eius singularem et nefariam
crudelitatem. Hic, summo in Arvernis ortus loco et 3
magnae habitus auctoritatis, "Nihil," inquit, "de eorum
sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant, neque hos habendos civium loco
neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum his mihi res 4
sit, qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio omnium
vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollitia, non virtus, paulisper inopiam 5
ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego 6

hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam
7 fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus.
8 Quid hominum milibus LXXX uno loco interfectis propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene
9 in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerunt, nec stultitia ac temeritate vestra aut animi imbecillitate omnem Galliam prosternere et
10 perpetuae servituti subicere. An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa
11 cotidie exerceri putatis? Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu praesaepto, his utimini testibus, appropinquare eorum adventum; cuius rei timore exterriti
12 diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere, quod nostri maiores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopia subacti eorum corporibus, qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se
13 hostibus tradiderunt. Cuius rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui et posteris prodi
14 pulcherrimum iudicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Depopulata Gallia Cimbri magnaque illata calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt; iura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reli-
15 querunt. Romani vero quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidia adducti, quos fama nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere atque his aeternam iniungere servitutem? Neque enim ulla alia
16 condicione bella gesserunt. Quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, iure et legibus commutatis, securibus subiecta perpetua premitur servitute."

LXXVIII. Sententiis dictis constituunt, ut ii, qui vale- 1
tudine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant atque
omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam
descendant; illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat 2
atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis
subeundam condicionem. Mandubii, qui eos oppido rece- 3
perant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi 4
cum ad munitiones Romanorum accessissent, flentes omnibus
precibus orabant, ut se in servitutem receptos cibo iuvarent.
At Caesar dispositis in vallo custodibus recipi prohibebat. 5

LXXIX. Interea Commius reliquique duces, quibus 1
summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad
Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriore occupato non longius
mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero 2
die equitatu ex castris educto omnem eam planiciem, quam
in longitudinem tria milia passuum patere demonstravimus,
complent pedestresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in
locis superioribus constituunt. Erat ex oppido Alesia 3
despectus in campum. Concurrunt his auxiliis visis; fit
gratulatio inter eos atque omnium animi ad laetitiam
excitantur. Itaque productis copiis ante oppidum considunt 4
et proximam fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent,
seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

LXXX. Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem 1
munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque
locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et
proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae 2
summum undique iugum tenebant, despectus atque omnes
milites intenti pugnae proventum exspectabant. Galli 3
inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae
interiecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et
nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. Ab his complures
de improviso vulnerati proelio excedebant. Cum suos 4

pugna superiores esse Galli confiderent et nostros multitudine premi viderent, ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et hi, qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. 5 Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis cupiditas 6 et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabat. Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt 7 eosque propulerunt; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittarii 8 circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes usque ad castra insecuti sui colligendi 9 facultatem non dederunt. At ii, qui ab Alesia processerant, maesti prope victoria desperata se in oppidum receperunt.

LXXXI. Uno die intermisso Galli atque hoc spatio magno cratium, scalarum, harpagonum numero effecto media nocte silentio ex castris egressi ad campestres muni- 2 tiones accedunt. Subito clamore sublato, qua significatione, qui in oppido obsidebantur, de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates proicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem 3 pertinent, parant administrare. Eodem tempore clamore exaudito dat tuba signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex 4 oppido educit. Nostri, ut superioribus diebus suus cuique erat locus attributus, ad munitiones accedunt; fundis librilibus sudibus, quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus 5 Gallos proterrent. Prospectu tenebris adempto multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complura tormentis tela 6 coniciuntur. At Marcus Antonius et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus hae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

LXXXII. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant; posteaquam propius

successerunt, aut se stimulis inopinantes induebant aut in scrobes delati transfodiebantur aut ex vallo ac turribus traiecti pilis muralibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis nulla munitione perrupta, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. At interiores, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant, proferunt, priores fossas explent, diutius in his rebus administrandis morati prius suos discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. Ita re infecta in oppidum reverterunt. 2 3 4

LXXXIII. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt; locorum peritos adhibent; ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri: necessario paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. Haec Gaius Antistius Reginus et Gaius Caninius Rebilus legati cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus duces hostium LX milia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. His copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris prima vigilia egressus prope confecto sub lucem itinere post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere iussit. Cum iam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt. 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

LXXXIV. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus ex oppido egreditur; cratis, longurios, musculos, 1

falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert.
2 Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur: quae minime visa pars firma est, huc concurritur.
3 Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur nec
4 facile pluribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, qui post tergum pugnantibus exstitit, quod
5 suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare; omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

LXXXV. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque ex
2 parte geratur, cognoscit; laborantibus submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum esse illud tempus, quo maxime
3 contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint,
4 finem laborum omnium exspectant. Maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. Iniquum loci ad declivitatem fastigium
5 magnum habet momentum. Alii tela coniciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defetigatis in vicem integri succedunt.
6 Agger ab universis in munitionem coniectus et ascensum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terra occultaverant Romani, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec vires suppetunt.

LXXXVI. His rebus cognitis Caesar Labienum cum
2 cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinere non posset, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnaret;
3 id nisi necessario ne faciat. Ipse adit reliquos, cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum
4 fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. Interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta exscensu temptant; huc ea, quae
5 paraverant, conferunt. Multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas explent, falcibus vallum ac loricam rescindunt.

LXXXVII. Mittit primo Brutum adulescentem cum 1
cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gaium Fabium legatum;
postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros sub-
sidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus eo, quo 2
Labienum miserat, contendit; cohortes IIII ex proximo cas-
tello deducit, equitum partem se sequi, partem circumire
exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri iubet.
Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium 3
sustinere poterant, coactis una XL cohortibus, quas ex
proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per
nuntios facit certiorem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat
Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

LXXXVIII. Eius adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, 1
quo insigni in proeliis uti consuerat, turmisque equitum et
cohortibus visis, quas se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superio-
ribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium
committunt. Utrimque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex 2
vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. Nostri omissis 3
pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus
cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant. Hostes terga
vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes.
Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercas- 4
sivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga comprehenditur; signa
militaria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tanto
numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex 5
oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a
munitionibus reducunt. Fit protinus hac re audita ex 6
castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius
diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae
deleri potuissent. De media nocte missus equitatus novis- 7
simum agmen consequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque
interficitur, reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt.

LXXXIX. Postero die Vercingetorix consilio convocato 1

id bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed com-
2 munis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae
cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offerre, seu morte sua
3 Romanis satis facere seu vivum tradere velint. Mittuntur
de his rebus ad Caesarem legati. Iubet arma tradi, prin-
4 cipes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris consedit; eo
duces producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur, arma proici-
5 untur. Reservatis Aeduis atque Arvernis, si per eos
civitates reciperare posset, ex reliquis captivis toto exer-
citui capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

XC. His rebus confectis in Aeduos proficiscitur; civitatem
2 recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernis missi, quae imperaret,
se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum
3 obsidum. Legiones in hiberna mittit. Captivorum circiter
4 XX milia Aeduis Arvernisque reddit. Titum Labienum
duabus cum legionibus et equitatu in Sequanos proficisci
5 iubet; huic M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit. Gaium
Fabium legatum et Lucium Minucium Basilum cum legio-
nibus duabus in Remis collocat, ne quam ab finitimis Bel-
6 lovacis calamitatem accipiant. Gaium Antistium Reginum
in Ambivaretos, Titum Sextium in Bituriges, Gaium
Caninium Rebilum in Rutenos cum singulis legionibus
7 mittit. Quintum Tullium Ciceronem et Publium Sulpicium
Cabilloni et Matiscone in Aeduis ad Ararim rei frumen-
tariae causa collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemare constituit.
8 His rebus ex litteris Caesaris cognitis Romae dierum XX
supplicatio redditur.

# NOTES.

N.B.—An obelus (†) denotes a variant reading (v.l., *varia lectio*) in the text.

**Ch. 1-11.**—*While Caesar was passing the winter in Cisalpine Gaul, the Gauls beyond the Alps entered into a confederacy to expel the Roman invaders. The first move in the rebellion was a massacre by the Carnutes of the Roman traders in Cenabum. Other Gauls—the Senones, Cadurci, Bituriges, etc.—then joined the Arverni in the national struggle, and selected Vercingetorix, an Arvernian chieftain, as their leader. The Aedui however, though sympathising with their fellow-countrymen, for the present remained neutral. On hearing of the outbreak Caesar at once hurried across the Alps, with the intention of joining his ten legions which were wintering in Northern Gaul, and, though he was sorely perplexed how to pass in safety through the enemy's country, overcame all obstacles by his energy and decision. He crossed the Cevennes in spite of the deep snow, and appeared among the Arverni, a movement which drew Vercingetorix back to defend his tribesmen. The road to the north was now clear, and Caesar passed rapidly through the territories of the Aedui, and had joined Labienus and his legions on the Seine before Vercingetorix knew where he was. Vercingetorix now proceeded to besiege Gorgobina, and Caesar, to protect his allies, marched south from Agedincum, his central depot, stormed Vellaunodum, and took Cenabum (Orleans) on the Loire.*

[See Index for the following names: **Clodius, Cenabum, Vercingetorix,** Arverni, **Gergovia,** Aedui, **Pompeius,** Liger, **Narbo,** Cevenna, Vienna, and Agedincum.]

**1.** § 1. **quieta Gallia:** ablative absolute (otherwise called ablative of "attendant circumstances"). This construction may usually be rendered by a dependent clause, whether of (i) time ("when," "after," "while," etc.), (ii) cause ("because," "as," "since," etc.), (iii) concession ("although"), or (iv) condition ("if," "even if"). In the present instance the ideas of time and cause run into one another. **Italiam:** *i.e.* Northern Italy, strictly known as Gallia Cisalpina, which was a portion of Caesar's province. See Introduction,

p. xi. At this date (52 B.C.) the name Italia belonged properly only to that part of the peninsula which lay south of the rivers Rubico (*Fiumicello*) and Macra (*Magra*), and Caesar was prohibited from entering it partly by the law that no provincial governor might leave his own *provincia*, partly by the law that, without special commission from the government, no one might exercise military powers within Italy proper. Notice that "to" with the name of a country is rendered by *in* and the accusative. **ad conventus agendos:** a provincial governor had two main duties — to command in war and to administer justice. His province was divided into a number of Circuits of Assize (*conventus*), and once a year he attended at the chief town of each circuit to adjudge between litigants. This is the meaning of the phrase *conventus agere*, the term *conventus* being applied alike to the circuit or district and to the assize itself. Caesar made these assizes an excuse for spending almost every winter in Cisalpine Gaul, whence he could easily communicate with his friends in Rome, and keep watch upon the course of politics there. **proficiscitur:** historic present, a tense which the student should nearly always render by the English past, "he set out." Subordinate clauses in dependence on a historic present may stand indifferently either in primary or historic sequence. **de Clodii caede:** for the assassination of Clodius, a democrat and to some extent a follower of Caesar, see Index. It occurred on Jan. 20th, 52 B.C. **de senatusque consulto:** a *senatusconsultum* is a "resolution" of the Senate, as distinct from a "law," which required to be passed by the people. The purport of the resolution is expressed by the following substantival clause *ut . . . coniurarent.* **certior factus:** *certior fieri* is literally "to be made more certain," and so "to be informed." **iuniores:** all Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six years were *iuniores* and liable to military service in the field. **coniurarent:** "take the military oath" of allegiance to their commander as the representative of the government. The riots following the murder of Clodius, who was a favourite with the lower classes, assumed so violent a character that the Senate called out the entire levy of Italy, and placed it at the disposal of Pompeius Magnus (see Index) for the restoration of order. **tota provincia:** "*throughout* his entire province." When the noun is qualified by the epithet *medius* or *totus* the preposition expressing place (*in*) is omitted. Otherwise, in prose, the preposition must be used, except with a few substantives like *loco*, *locis*, *regione*, and with names of towns and small islands. See on 3, § 3.

§ 2. **res:** *res* must be translated according to the context. Here it may be rendered "news"; in the next line but one, "state of affairs." **rumoribus:** dative, "added to such reports the unfounded statement that," etc. What they added is expressed by the accusative and infinitive clauses *retineri . . . posse*, which are therefore grammatically the object of *affingunt*. To the whole of this object refers the relative *quod*. **urbano:** the adjective is equivalent to the genitive *urbis*, "of the capital," *i.e.* Rome, which is called emphatically

*urbs*, "*the* city." **exercitum**: *i.e.* the ten legions which he had left to winter in the north of Gaul, amongst the Treveri, Lingones, and Senones. The majority of them were encamped at Agedincum.

§ 3. **occasione**: if they could keep Caesar away from his legions, they believed themselves able to crush the latter, or drive them out of Gaul. *Occasio* as usual means "opportunity." **qui . . . dolerent**: "inasmuch as they were annoyed." The relative clause has a causal force, and hence the subjunctive mood. **se . . . subiectos**: supply *esse*, which is very often omitted—"that they had been subjected." *Imperio* is dative, and *ante* is here an adverb qualifying *dolerent*.

§ 4. **indictis . . . locis**: the subject of the principal verb (*queruntur*) is *principes* (*Galliae*), while, of the ablatives, *indictis conciliis* is an ablative absolute (*lit.* "meetings being appointed, they complained," *i.e.* "they appointed meetings and complained"), and *silvestribus . . . locis* is an ablative of place without a preposition (cp. note on *tota provincia*, § 1). Distinguish *concilium*, "assembly," and *consilium*, abstract, "counsel," but note that *consilium* often means a "body of counsellors," such as a general's council of war. **Acconis**: Acco was the ringleader in the rising of several Gallic tribes in the previous year (53 B.C.). Caesar had crushed the rising, and had caused Acco to be executed under the regular forms of Roman law, as a subject and a rebel. He meant the act to signify that the Gauls were now subjects of Rome, and so they understood it, but were only so much the more disaffected.

§ 5. **hunc casum**: "a doom such as this," "a similar doom," *i.e.* like that which befell Acco. **ad ipsos**: *i.e.*, *ad se ipsos*, referring to the subject of the sentence (*principes*). **fortunam**: note that *miseror* and *commiseror* take the object in the accusative, but *misereor* and *miseresco* in the genitive. **qui . . . faciant . . vindicent**: "men *to* make a beginning," etc., the relative clauses being final. Hence the subjunctive mood. **capitis periculo**: "at the peril of their own lives." *Caput* means a man's person with all its rights and privileges, his place in the world, and so his life. *Periculo* is an ablative of manner. Such an ablative should, according to rule, be accompanied by a preposition (*cum*) or epithet, if not both [thus we may translate "with swiftness" by *cum celeritate*, *cum summa celeritate*, *summa celeritate*, but not by *celeritate* alone]; but a limited number of words are thus used even in the best prose without either epithet or preposition. Such are *vi*, *fraude*, *iure*, *iniuria*, *dolo*, *natura*; and in Caesar, *consuetudine*, *silentio*, and some others. **vindicent**: *vindicare* (possibly from *vim dicere*, "to assert authority over") means first "to claim" or "to appropriate," and from this comes the common phrase *vindicare aliquem in libertatem*, "to claim a person into liberty," "to deliver." The verb also means "to punish": *e.g.*, *in Venetos gravius vindicandum statuit*, he determined that a more severe punishment should be inflicted on the Veneti.

§ 6. **habendam**: *ratio* is a "calculation," and *rationem habere* is "to take into account." The Gauls said: *ratio est habenda*, *priusquam*

*nostra consilia efferantur, ut C. . . . intercludatur.* According to rule *nostra* should become *sua* in dependence on *dicunt*, but Caesar sometimes uses *eius* or *eorum* instead of *suus* in order to avoid ambiguity. *Efferantur* (subjunctive) is used because the action expressed by the *priusquam* clause is *purposely* anticipated: they *purposed* to intercept Caesar before their plans *could be* made known. **ut . . . intercludatur**: in English we should say "take account how to" or "take measures to." The clause is final (*ut* = "in order that").

§ 7. **id esse facile**: this and the following section are in oratio obliqua, the controlling verb ("they said," *dicunt*, historic present) being carried on from § 6. The subjunctives which follow are all those of dependent clauses in oratio obliqua. The primary sequence (e.g. *audeant*), which is often mixed by Caesar with secondary or historic sequence (e.g. *auderent*), is used to render the narrative more vivid, as reproducing the tense, if not the mood, of oratio recta. The Gauls actually said: *facile est, quod . . . audent . . . potest.* **absente imperatore**: ablative absolute (ablative of attendant circumstances), "in the absence of their commander." **ex hibernis**: supply *castris*, "from their winter camp," and cp. for a similar ellipsis *aestiva*, "summer camp," and *stativa*, "standing camp."

§ 8. **praestare**: in direct oration, *praestat interfici, quam non . . . quam a maioribus accepimus, recuperare.* In strict sequence *accepimus* would become *accepissent* instead of *acceperint*. *Praestare* is here impersonal, "to be better *or* preferable." **maioribus**: *maiores* are "ancestors" just as *minores* are "descendants."

**2.** § 1. **communis**: "common" in the sense of "general," "national." **causa**: ablative of manner, used almost like a preposition, "for the sake of." It is always followed by a genitive. **facturos**: sc. *se* from the preceding clause. *Principes* is here an adjective used predicatively with *se* understood, "they promised to be the first of all to make war." Note how the Latin idiom has the future infinitive after *polliceor* where we use loosely the present.

§ 2. **in praesentia**: neuter plural agreeing with *tempora* understood, "under the present circumstances." **obsidibus cavere**: the ablative is one of the instrument, *lit.* "to be on their guard one with another by help of hostages," *i.e.* "to use hostages as mutual security." Distinguish *cavere aliquem*, "to be on one's guard against any one," and *cavere alicui*, "to be on one's guard for some one," "to protect some one." **possint**: normally *quoniam*, "since," requires the indicative mood. The subjunctive is here used because the reason is represented, not as occurring to the mind of the writer (Caesar), but as present in the minds of the Gauls. In English the force of the mood can be shown by translating, "because, *as they felt*, they could not," etc. This use of the subjunctive is known as that of virtual oratio obliqua. **ne res efferatur**: ("lest their action should be disclosed"), because the interchange of hostages could not be effected without publicity, and so the whole plot would become known. **ut . . . sanciatur**: the whole clause depends as object upon

*petunt.* *Sancire* was to make a promise or a law binding by laying down the penalty incurred by him who should break it. The penalty was called *sanctio*, and in this case it was the curse invoked upon themselves by those who took the oath (*iusiurandum*) of loyalty. *Fides* here means "word of honour." **collatis . . . signis**: ablative of attendant circumstances. The standards of the various tribes were set side by side, and the oath was taken before them. **quo more**: we say "in the fashion in which," etc. This seems better than joining *more eorum* and taking *quo* alone, as some editors do, "wherein, according to their custom, is involved a most solemn ceremony." **ne deserantur**: this clause explains the purpose of the *sanctio*.

§ 3. **collaudatis . . . dato . . . constituto**: the three ablatives absolute do duty for so many finite clauses of time. See note on **1**, § 1. **discedítur**: *discedo* is an intransitive verb, and as such can only be used impersonally in the passive. So *discedítur* (historic present) = "it was gone away from the assembly," *i.e.* "there was a dissolution of the assembly," "the assembly broke up." This impersonal usage lays stress more on the *fact* of an occurrence than on the *persons* concerned in it.

**3.** § 1. **ea dies**: when *dies* (sing.) means "a day," *i.e.* twenty-four hours, it is masculine, and when it means "a time" or "date" it is feminine. In the plural it is invariably masculine. **desperatis**: "wrought to desperation," rather than "desperate" in the sense of "ruffianly." **hominibus**: the ablative is in apposition to *Gutruato et C.* **Cenabum**: no preposition (*ad*) is required with the names of towns and small islands, with *domum* or with *rus*, to express "place whither." **causa**: "for the sake of," as in **2**, § 1. There were large numbers of Romans settled in Gaul for many years before this date (52 B.C.), trading in corn and making large profits by money-lending. Most of the wealthier merchants would be *equites*, for whom see next note. **honestum equitem**: *honestus* means "honourable" or "respected," and cannot be rendered by "honest." In early times the *equites* or "knights" were the citizens who served as cavalry in war, and there were 1800 of these provided with horses by the State. In the time of Caesar, the *equites*, who now included all wealthy citizens of non-senatorial dignity, had ceased to perform any military duties, applying themselves solely to business, so that the name came to signify the whole class of rich merchants. [The cavalry was now largely recruited from provincials, and even aliens were not rejected.] At this date it was needful for a man to have property worth 400,000 sesterces (£3400) if he wanted to claim the name and privileges of an *eques*. **rei frumentariae**: "commissariat," the duty of supplying the army with grain for bread. The case is dative after *praeerat*. **iussu**: "by command of," a word of the fourth declension which is only used in the ablative case. Its converse is *iniussu*, "without orders from."

§ 2. **ubi quae . . . incidit res**: "whenever there happens any matter," etc. The indicative is the correct mood in the best prose for expressing indefinite recurrence of an act, but later writers like

Livy and Tacitus prefer the subjunctive. *Quae* is the indefinite adjective (*qui, quae* or *qua, quod*), and is most generally found after *ne, si, nisi,* and *num.* **maior atque illustrior**: this is an instance of the absolute use of the comparative, no standard of comparison being expressed, "any matter of rather great note and importance." **clamore**: watchers were stationed at short distances all along the road by which the news was to be conveyed. One man shouted the message to the next, and so it passed down the whole line. The same method is practised to this day by the Kaffir and Zulu tribes of South Africa. **agros regionesque**: *agri* are "open fields," *regiones* "large tracts" of country. **hunc**: i.e. *clamorem.* **deinceps**: "in turn," "in regular succession." **accidit**: this of course is the perfect tense of *accido.*

§ 3. **quae . . . essent**: the mood is due to the concessive ("though") force of the clause, "*though* the deed had only been perpetrated at Cenabum at sunrise, it was heard of in the lands of the Arverni." **Cenabi**: locative, "at Orleans." The locative was once a special case denoting "place where," and having the special suffix *-i*; e.g. *Roma-i* (afterwards *Romae*) = "at Rome," *Tarenti* = "at Tarentum," *Carthagini* = "at Carthage." Later it was supplanted by the ablative (i) in the plural of all the declensions, and (ii) in the singular of the third declension, e.g. *Carthagine.* In classical Latin the locative denoting "place where" is found only in the names of towns and small islands (of the first and second declensions singular), and in a very few common nouns; e.g. *militiae* = "at the wars," *domi* = "at home," *humi* = "on the ground." **oriente sole**: the ablative absolute does duty for an ablative of time, "with the rising sun," "at sunrise." **ante . . . vigiliam**: "before the ending of the first watch." Notice how the Latin attributive participle is rendered in English by the corresponding abstract noun. So *ademptus Hector*, "the slaying of Hector"; *urbs condita*, "the founding of the city"; *mortuus Caesar*, "the death of Caesar." The night from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal parts called "watches," which would vary in length according to the season of the year, though the third watch of course invariably commenced at midnight. It was winter now, and the first watch would end between 8 and 9 p.m. **milium**: genitive of quality or description, depending on *spatium. Mille* is treated as an adjective, but *milia* (plural) as a noun; hence "1000 paces" = *mille passus*, but "2000 paces" and so on = *duo milia passuum*, etc. *Circiter* is here an adverb, "about."

4. § 1. **ibi**: "there," *i.e.* "among the Arverni." **summae potentiae**: the genitive of quality or description is always accompanied by an epithet; thus "a man of great ability" = *vir magni ingenii*, but "a man of ability" = *vir ingeniosus*, not *vir ingenii.* **principatum**: "leading authority over the whole of (Central) Gaul." *Principatus* does not differ much from *regnum*, though it is a less harsh term to use; it means "overlordship," "suzerainty," "sovereignty." **ab civitate**: *civitas* is equivalent to *cives*, abstract for concrete, and

accordingly the ablative is treated as one of the agent and takes the preposition *ab*. The ablative of instrument, used of inanimate things, requires no preposition. *Civitas* means "state," "tribe." **clientibus**: "dependents," men who had placed themselves in the power of a noble by borrowing money, and repaid the loan by personal service The "clients" of a Roman dignitary were analogous, but were reduced to their position from a different cause. **incendit**: sc. *eos*. The usual construction would be *clientes convocatos incendit*, because it is not admissible to make the noun of the ablative absolute dependent on the principal verb as subject or object. Thus "Caesar captured the enemy and slew them" must be rendered *Caesar hostes captos trucidavit*, not *Caesar, hostibus captis, eos trucidavit*.

§ 2. **concurritur**: "a rush was made"; impersonal, like *disceditur*, 2, § 3. **temptandam**: supply *esse*. The construction is accusative and infinitive with *fortunam*, depending on *existimabant*. *Temptare* means "to try," "test." **ex oppido Gergovia**: "from Gergovia" would be expressed by the simple ablative *Gergovia*; but when a common noun is placed in apposition with the name of a town, the preposition must be used with such common noun. So "to the town of Gergovia" would be *ad oppidum Gergoviam*.

§ 3. **non . . . atque**: "he did not cease . . . but . . ." (instead of "and"). **perditorum**: *perditus* (from *perdo*) is "lost" in the sense of "ruined," "desperate."

§ 4. **hac . . . manu**: "a body of these." So *hic amor* = "love of this." **adit**: *adire* means "to approach," and so "to make overtures to." **quoscumque**: the relative refers to the (suppressed) object of *perducit*. Join *ex civitate* with *quoscumque*, "all *in* the State." **adversarios**: *i.e.* the *principes* of § 2. **paulo ante**: *lit.* "before by a little," *paulo* being in reality an ablative of the amount of difference. On the other hand *paulum* is really an accusative of extent. Thus *paulum antecessit* = "he went ahead for a little distance," but *paulo antecessit* = "he went on somewhat before."

§ 5. **quoque versus**: "in every direction." The words are also written as one, *quoqueversus* and (wrongly, as is shown by inscriptions) *quoquoversus*. *Quōque* is to *quo* ("whither") as *quisque* is to *quis*.

§ 6. **imperium**: the right to "command *in war*," which was the chief of the rights included in the word *imperium* as used technically by a Roman. **Oceanum**: the Atlantic, off the western shores of France.

§ 7. **civitatibus**: dative of the indirect object, "he puts the states under demands for hostages." *Impero* takes a dative of the person commanded, while the subject-matter of the command is expressed (i), as here, by the accusative, (ii) by *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive, e.g. *tibi impero ne hoc facias*, "I command you not to do this." The first construction is a favourite one with Caesar. **certum**: *certus* is "certain" in the sense of "fixed."

§ 8. **quaeque**: feminine of *quisque*, and so unlike *quodque* in the next line. **domi**: locative. See on *Cenabi*, 3, § 3. **quodque ante tempus**: *quodque* = *et quod*, and *quod* is the interrogative *adjective* (the *pronoun* would be *quid*)—"he determined what accoutrements

each State should prepare at home, and before what date (they should prepare them)." **efficiat**: "should make," "*is to* make." *Efficiat* is deliberative subjunctive dependent on *constituit*, and represents a direct question of the same form: *quantum armorum efficiat quaeque civitas?* "what accoutrements is each State to prepare?"

§ 10. **maiore . . . delicto**: the ablative absolute here stands for a temporal clause, "when there had been committed any rather serious offence." See the note on *quieta Gallia*, 1, § 1. The comparatives *maiore* and *leviore* are used absolutely, *i.e.* the standard of comparison is omitted; cp. 3, § 2. **domum**: accusative of the goal of motion without a preposition. See the note on *Cenabum*, 3, § 1. **reliquis documento**: *documento* is the dative of the result or predicate, often joined with *esse*, *fieri*, *habere*, and *dare*. It is, as usual, found in conjunction with a dative of advantage, *reliquis*, "so that they might serve as a warning to the rest."

**5.** § 1. **his suppliciis**: ablative of the instrument modifying *coacto*. **in Rutenos**: a concise expression for "into the land of the Ruteni"; so *in Bituriges*, "into the land of the Bituriges."

§ 2. **adventu**: a variety of the ablative of time, "on his arrival." So below, § 7, *discessu*. **quorum . . . fide**: "in whose allegiance," *i.e.* "in allegiance to whom they were." The Bituriges were in a manner subjects of the Aedui. **rogatum**: "to ask for aid." *Rogatum* is the so-called supine in *-um*. In reality it is an accusative of the goal of motion, and is therefore joined only with verbs expressing motion, e.g. *mitto*, *venio*, etc.; but while having the inflexion of a noun, it governs a case as a verb, so that *subsidium* is its direct object. See further on 11, § 4 note. **quo**: "in order that." This conjunction is normally found only in clauses containing a comparative (as here, *facilius*).

§ 3. **de consilio legatorum**: "by advice of the legates." The *legati* were the representatives of the commander-in-chief, and were commonly chosen by him, although the senate constitutionally decided upon their number, and in theory even claimed the right of naming them. They were always members of the senate, but they were responsible to the general and not to the senate. Caesar had ten *legati*, each of whom commanded a legion. The most trusted of these was T. Labienus, and others were Cotta, Sabinus, Plancus, Fabius, Trebonius, and Q. Cicero. This special meaning of *legatus* must of course be distinguished from the more general meaning of "envoys," e.g. *legatos mittunt*, in § 2. **subsidio**: "as a support," a predicative dative like *documento*, 4, § 10.

§ 4. **cum . . . venissent**: "on arriving" or "having arrived." *Cum* with an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may often be translated by a present or past participle, active or passive according to the voice of the verb used. In reality such clauses are causal or concessive, and hence the use of the subjunctive. **paucos dies**: accusative of the duration of time.

§ 5. **legatis** : here in the special sense "lieutenant-generals." See note on § 3. **veritos** : they said : *Biturigum perfidiam veriti revertimus. quibus hoc consilii esse cognovimus, ut, si flumen transissemus,* (representing fut. perf.) . . . *nos circumsisteret.* **revertisse** : authors of the best period use the active *reverto* only in the perfect tenses, *reverti, reverteram,* etc., while the other tenses are formed from the deponent *revertor* (cp. *revertuntur,* § 4). But the perfect participle *reversus,* "having returned," is from *revertor.* **id consilii** : = *id consilium.* The genitive is really partitive, and the idiom is a favourite one with Caesar. *Quibus* is the customary dative of the possessor with *esse : est illis id consilii* = "they have this design." **transissent** : the pluperfect of the subjunctive is in oblique narration the regular equivalent of the future perfect of direct speech ; and in Latin the protasis (*if*-clause) of a hypothesis referring to what is still in the future—"they will surround us, if we cross"—is put into the future perfect tense (*transierimus,* "shall have crossed"), which is logically more correct than the English. **una ex parte** : "*on* one side." **altera** : = *altera ex parte.* For this meaning of *ex,* cp. that of *ab,* 34, § 3.

§ 6. **eane** : *-ne* is the enclitic interrogative, serving to mark the clause as a question (here indirect, and hence the mood of *fecerint*). *Perfidia* is ablative of the cause. The two members of a double indirect question may be introduced indifferently by *-ne . . . an . . .,* or by *utrum . . . an . . .* The question here depends on the phrase *non . . . proponendum.* **nihil** : adverbial, "because it is not at all clear to us." By *nobis* Caesar of course means *mihi,* "to me." **pro certo** : "for a fact." Caesar is very fond of using the neuter of adjectives of three terminations as a noun, especially after a preposition. So we have *ab infimo,* "from the bottom" ; *ex occulto,* "by surprise" ; *ex propinquo,* "from a short distance." This usage is rarely found with adjectives of less than three terminations.

§ 7. **iunguntur** : "unite themselves." The passive verb in Latin not seldom does duty for a reflexive, e.g. *cingor armis* = "I gird myself with armour."

**6.** § 1. **Italiam** : Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, which strictly speaking did not yet form part of Italy ; see on **1**, § 1. **virtute** : "owing to the energy," ablative of the means. **intellegeret** : causal subjunctive with *cum.* See the note on *venissent,* **5**, § 4.

§ 2. **qua . . . posset** : an indirect question depending on *difficultate,* and explaining what the difficulty was. The direct question is *qua ratione . . . possum?*

§ 3. **provinciam** : here used in the special sense of Gallia Narbonensis, which was commonly styled "*the* Province," a name which the land still bears as *Provence.* The legions were wintering beyond the borders of Narbonese Gaul, in Gallia Celtica, and, owing to the recent revolt, would have to fight a battle before they could reach the Province. **arcesseret** : Caesar's thought is *si legiones . . . arcessam, me absente . . . dimicabunt,* "if I summon the legions, they will have

to fight in my absence," which is the usual form of a hypothetical sentence referring to the definite future. When this is put into dependence on *intellegebat*, the future indicative of the protasis (*if*-clause) becomes by rule imperfect subjunctive, while the verb of the apodosis (*result*-clause) becomes future infinitive, *dimicaturas (esse)*. **se absente**: ablative absolute, "in his absence." **si . . . contenderet . . . committi**: Caesar's thought is *si contendam* (future) . . . *mea salus committetur*, "if I hasten . . . my life will be entrusted," a hypothetical sentence referring to the definite future. In dependence on *videbat*, the future indicative of the protasis becomes imperfect subjunctive, but the future indicative of the apodosis, instead of being put by rule into the future infinitive (*commissum iri*), becomes present infinitive. This idiom is to secure vividness, just as we say "I am going to-morrow" instead of "I shall go to-morrow." **viderentur**: the clause is part of Caesar's thoughts, and as the main sentence is expressed in oblique form (*committi*), the dependent clause naturally falls into the subjunctive. The reference is to the Aedui, who, as the result showed, joined the revolt, though they had been much trusted by Caesar.

7. § 2. **utrisque**: "from both peoples"; *uter*, *alter*, and similar words are used in the plural when referring to two groups of persons. They are also put in the plural when qualifying nouns plural in form but singular in meaning, e.g. *altera castra*. **Narbonem versus**: *Narbonem*, "to Narbo," is accusative of the goal of motion without a preposition, and *versus* is an adverb, "in the direction of," "facing." The whole expression means "in the direction of Narbo."

§ 3. **antevertendum**: *antevertere* is to place one thing (accusative) before another (dative). In this instance the accusative of the direct object is replaced by the substantival clause *ut . . . proficisceretur*, and *consiliis* is the dative of indirect object. *Antevertendum (esse)* is impersonal. Translate—"considered that to every other plan he must prefer starting for Narbo" (*lit.* "considered that there should be a placing before every other plan this, *viz.* that he should start").

§ 4. **provincialibus**: "dwelling in the province" (6, § 3, note). Another part of the tribe of the Ruteni dwelt among the Arverni, outside of the province, and *provincialibus* is added to distinguish the two.

§ 5. **supplementum**: these were drawn from the levies which Caesar had lately raised in Cisalpine Gaul, on hearing of the disturbances in Rome. **fines**: "borders," "lands," "territory."

8. § 1. **putabat**: the subject is Lucterius. **proficiscitur**: sc. Caesar. § 2. **etsi**: with the indicative "although," with the subjunctive "even if." Thus *etsi impediebat*, "although it blocked"; *etsi impediret*, "even if it were blocking." In other words, the indicative is used when what is conceded is regarded as a fact, the subjunctive when something is conceded merely for the sake of argument.

**durissimo tempore**: the ablative of time here does duty for a clause expressing the reason. It was still winter, probably February. **sex in altitudinem pedum**: the four words form one idea—"which was six feet deep"—and stand as an epithet of *nive*. The genitive *pedum* is one of quality; cp. *spatium milium passuum circiter centum*, "a space of about one hundred miles." The snow was all this depth, but he cleared a road through it. **summo . . . sudore**: ablative of manner, *cum* being unnecessary because of the presence of an epithet (*summo*).

§ 3. **inopinantibus**: modifies *oppressis* with the force of an adverb, "being surprised *unexpectedly*." **ne singulari quidem**: "not a single man." *Singularis* more commonly means "unique," "extraordinary." *Ne . . . quidem* lend emphasis to the word which stands between them. **quam latissime possint**: "as widely as possible." The phrase literally means "as they have power, most widely," and the verb (*possum*) is often omitted without affecting the sense. Cp. *quam maximum*, "as great as possible," in the next line. *Possint* is here subjunctive, according to the rule that clauses dependent upon a subjunctive themselves also pass into that mood.

§ 4. † **haec fama**: "the report of this." See on *hac manu*, 4, § 3. From *haec* must be supplied *hi* with *nuntii*—"messages to this effect." There is another reading, *haec fama ac nuntiis*, where both nouns are ablatives of the instrument, and *haec* alone is the subject of *perferuntur*. **suis**: the reflexive *suus* in a final clause refers, according to rule, to the subject of the *principal* verb (i.e. *Arverni*). *Consulere aliquem* is "to ask a person's advice"; *consulere alicui* is "to take measures on behalf of a person or thing." **videat**: the subjunctive would be used even in direct speech (*videas*), because *cum*, denoting cause, is followed by that mood. What the Arverni said was: *Nostris fortunis consule; ne ab hostibus diripiamur; praesertim cum videas omne ad nos bellum translatum (esse)*.

§ 5. **in . . . versus**: "towards the lands of the Arverni"; *versus*, adverb, is often thus joined to prepositional expressions (*ad*, *in*, etc.).

**9.** § 1. **biduum**: "for two days"; accusative of duration of time, cp. *paucos dies*, 5, § 4. So *triduum*, "a period of three days"; *quadriduum*, "a period of four days." **usu ventura**: *usu venire* is a common expression in Caesar, meaning "to happen" (*lit.* "to come about by experience"). *Haec* refers to the fact that Vercingetorix marched into the lands of the Arverni, on hearing what Caesar's cavalry were doing there. Caesar's purpose was to make his way with all speed to his legions, which were wintering in Northern Gaul amongst the Senones, Treveri, and Lingones. To do so he must cross the lands of the Aedui. The Aedui, who were loyal to Caesar, were next neighbours to the Bituriges, who were in rebellion; and Vercingetorix was lying amongst the Bituriges with his whole army threatening the Aedui. If he heard of Caesar moving towards the Aedui, he would be able easily to intercept him. Therefore Caesar sent his cavalry to ravage Auvergne, foreseeing that Vercingetorix

would by this means be drawn southward to the aid of the Arverni and away from the Aedui. This was exactly what happened. While Vercingetorix was looking for Caesar in Auvergne, Caesar slipped by on the east, passed through the Aedui, and reached his legions. **per causam**: "on pretence of"; the phrase introduces a false reason. Caesar had to keep his real design (which was to ride away to his legions) hidden, because he could not trust his cavalry with the secret.

§ 2. **omnis**: accusative plural. The termination *-īs* is the more correct form of the accusative plural of 3rd decl. nouns and adjectives with *i*-stems. **quam latissime**: "as widely as possible"; cp. the use of the superlative adjective in *quam maximus*, "as great as possible." **daturum**: a verb of "saying" must be supplied from the preceding verb *monet*. *Operam dare* is "to take care." **triduo**: "than three days"; ablative of the standard of comparison.

§ 3. **constitutis . . . inopinantibus**: note the difference in the tense of the two ablatives absolute, "*when* this *had been* arranged, and *while* his men *were* off their guard."

§ 4. **recentem**: predicative, "finding refreshed the cavalry which," etc. **multis ante diebus**: *lit.* "before, by many days," *i.e.* "some time before." *Ante* is an adverb, and *diebus* is an ablative of the amount of difference. Cp. *paulo ante*, **4**, § 4. **consilii**: partitive genitive depending on *quid*, the indefinite pronoun. **sua**: referring, as usual, to the subject of the main verb, *viz.* Caesar, not to the Aedui themselves.

§ 5. **mittit**: the verb is used absolutely, *i.e.* without any expressed object, "sent messages." **priusque**: *i.e. et prius*, the *prius* belonging to *quam* in the next clause. The conjunctions *antequam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are often thus divided. **posset**: subjunctive, because Caesar *purposely* anticipated the announcement of his arrival to the Arverni by massing his forces; see on *efferantur*, **1**, § 6, note.

§ 6. **Gorgobinam**: this is both accusative of goal of motion with *profectus*, and also direct object of *oppugnare*. **Helvetico proelio victos**: the Boii had joined the Helvetii in their attempt to cross Gaul in defiance of Caesar (see Introd., § 5), and had shared in their defeat at the battle near Bibracte, 58 B.C. The survivors had been settled in Gorgobina by Caesar, and put in the custody of the Aedui, to whom they paid tribute.

**10.** § 1. **ad consilium capiendum**: "*as regards* adopting any plan of action." This is an instance of Caesar's wide use of prepositions. **difficultatem**: "misgiving." What this was is explained by the clause *ne . . . deficeret*, "misgiving that all the Gauls would join the revolt," including even the Aedui, whose subjects the Boii of Gorgobina Vercingetorix was now attacking. They would be likely to revolt if Caesar kept his legions where they were until the winter was over, because by that time Gorgobina would have fallen, and it would look as if Caesar was not able to help his allies the Aedui (*quod . . . esse* giving the reason for their revolting). **partem**:

accusative of duration. **stipendiariis**: *stipendium* is "tribute,' *stipendiarius* is "one who pays tribute." Here the Boii of Gorgobina are meant; see on *7*, § 6. **expugnatis**: the ablative absolute does duty for a clause expressing time, "on the reduction of" the Boii. Distinguish *pugno*, "fight," from its two compounds *oppugno*, "besiege," and *expugno*, "reduce." **in eo**: *i.e.* "in Caesar." **si maturius educeret**: protasis to *ne . . . laboraret*, which itself depends again on *difficultatem*, and gives the second ground for misgiving in Caesar's mind. *Maturius* is used absolutely, "too soon." **ab re frumentaria**: "in point (*lit.* "from the side") of supplies." So we have *a dextro cornu*, "on the right wing." **duris subvectionibus**: "owing to the difficulty of bringing up supplies."

§ 3. **praemittit**: sc. *nuntios*, to which the following relative refers. **doceant, hortenturque**: these subjunctives express purpose, *i.e.* they are final subjunctives. **in fide**: "loyal"; cp. the meaning in **5**, § 2.

§ 4. **Agedinci**: locative; see on *Cenabi*, **3**, § 3.

**11.** § 1. **altero die**: *alter* is the proper word for expressing "the second" in a series. The ablative is that of point of time, "on the morrow." **ad oppidum**: the preposition is necessary according to the rule laid down in the note on *ex oppido*, **4**, § 2. **ne quem**: for the use of the indefinite adjective, see on *ubi quae*, **3**, § 2. **quo**: the final conjunction, "in order that." **expeditiore**: predicative, "procure supplies the more easily." The ablative is the regular case after *utor*. **biduo**: ablative of the time within which, "in two days."

§ 3. **qui conficeret**: subjunctive of purpose, "in order that he (*i.e.* Trebonius) might complete the business." **quam primum**: sc. *potuit*, "as soon as he could," "with all possible speed"; see on **8**, § 3, *quam latissime*.

§ 4. **qui**: referring to *Carnutum* (gen. plur., "of the Carnutes") in the previous clause. **ductum iri**: this, the so-called future infinitive passive, is in reality an instance of the use of the supine to express goal of motion (see **5**, § 2, note). The literal translation here is: "thought that it was being gone about (*iri*, impersonal) to protract the matter." **Cenabi**: genitive (not locative), in the gerundival construction. **quod eo mitterent**: final subjunctive, "to send thither," *i.e.* to Cenabum.

§ 5. **pervenit**: sc. Caesar. *Huc* means "to Cenabum." **diei tempore**: *i.e.* it was too late in the day to attempt to take the town by assault. **in posterum**: sc. *diem*, "to the morrow." **usui**: predicative dative, cp. on **4**, § 10. **sint**: the subjunctive is generic or consecutive, *i.e.* the relative *quae* here has the force of "such as."

§ 6. **fluminis**: we say "a bridge *over* the river." **veritus ne**: *vereor ne eat* means "I fear he *will* go," *vereor ut eat* means "I fear he will *not* go," and the same distinction applies to all words expressing fear or apprehension. Notice that *veritus*, like many other past participles of deponent verbs, is present in meaning, "fearing"; cp. *ratus*, "thinking."

§ 7. **silentio**: "silently," an example of Caesar's use of the ablative of manner without epithet or preposition; see on *periculo*, 1, § 5.

§ 8. **expeditas**: "ready for action," relieved that is of their marching kit, which was upwards of forty pounds in weight. **oppido**: *potior* requires an ablative of the object. **desideratis, quin**: *desidero* is "to miss" what one ought to have or usually has. *Quin* = "so as not." The literal translation is—"very few being missed, so that not all were taken prisoners," *i.e.* "very nearly all being captured." Thus used *quin* invariably takes the subjunctive.

§ 9. **Ligerem**: *traduco, transmitto*, and similar verbs admit two accusatives, one of the thing crossed, the other of that which is put across.

**Ch. 12-31.**—*From Cenabum Caesar marched on Noviodunum, and Vercingetorix, fearing that this place would fall like the others, desisted from the siege of Gorgobina and came within sight of the Romans. Unable to prevent the storming of the place, and finding that Caesar was pursuing his march to the south, he advised the Gauls to burn their villages, and to starve out the Romans by making it impossible for them to procure supplies. The Bituriges levelled twenty of their strongholds to the ground; but when the fate of Avaricum* (Bourges), *their beautiful and strongly fortified capital, was discussed, they implored that it might be spared, and Vercingetorix, much against his will, allowed them to have their way. Its almost impregnable position rendered its capture a matter of great difficulty; but Caesar was not daunted by the task, though his soldiers suffered great privations, owing to the scantiness of their supplies, and he was harassed by the attacks of Vercingetorix. However the Gauls did not dare to come to an engagement in the field, and the besieged, after holding out for four weeks, were beaten back, and their city stormed. To reduce the position Caesar had been compelled to make a mound no less than* 330 *feet long and* 80 *feet high, and so furious were his soldiers at the stoutness of the resistance that they signalised their success by a general massacre of all who fell into their hands. Despite this calamity, Vercingetorix was full of hope, and resolved to continue the struggle.*

[Refer to the Index for **Vercingetorix,** Noviodunum, **Avaricum, Cenabum,** Boii, Aedui, Bituriges, and Nitiobroges.]

**12.** § 1. **oppugnatione**: *i.e.* the siege of Gorgobina. The case is ablative of separation after *destitit*.

§ 2. **ille**: *i.e.* Caesar. There are at least three places of the name of Noviodunum mentioned in this book. This one is unknown: it was on the road from Cenabum (*Orleans*) to Avaricum (*Bourges*), and may have been at Sancerre, or Nevers, or elsewhere. **sibi . . . suae**: referring to *legati*, the subject of the main verb (*venissent*). For the case of *vitae*, see on *suis*, 8, § 4. The clause *ut . . . consuleret* explains what was the purport of their prayers, while the

following *ut . . . conficeret* is dependent on the clause *arma . . . iubet*, and gives Caesar's purpose in acting as he did. **qua**: the antecedent is *celeritate*. **pleraque**: "most things," *i.e.* "most of his aims."

§ 4. **conquirerent**: final subjunctive.

§ 5. **simul atque**: "as soon as." *Ac*, *atque*, frequently have an idiomatic meaning when joined to words expressing similarity or dissimilarity: e.g. *alius atque*, "other than"; *pariter atque*, "equally with." **murum complere**: "to man the wall" with warriors to defend it.

§ 6. **centuriones**: these were invariably selected from the bravest men in the legion. See Introd., § 6. **novi . . . consilii**: partitive genitive, dependent on *aliquid*. **occupaverunt**: "seized." *Occupare* means to "get possession of," "to seize," not "to occupy." **suos**: *sui*, as usual, means "their men." So *nostri*, "our men," "our troops."

13. § 1. **suis**: the case is dative of the indirect object with *submittit*, which means "to send *to the support of*." **secum**: the preposition *cum* is enclitic, *i.e.* is added as a suffix, to personal pronouns (e.g. *mecum*) and to the relative *qui* (e.g. *quibuscum*).

§ 2. **quibus profligatis**: "by their dispersal." For the translation of the participle by an abstract noun, cp. the note on *confectam vigiliam*, 3, § 3. **quorum opera**: "by whose doing." With this use of *opera* cp. the phrases *mea opera*, *tua opera*, "by my doing," "by my fault," etc. With *concitatam*, sc. *esse*.

§ 3. **regione**: "in a most productive tract." **eo . . . recepto**: equivalent to a conditional clause (see first note, 1, § 1), and serving as the protasis to *redacturum*. Caesar said: *hoc oppido recepto* or *si hoc oppidum recepero . . . redigam*. *Civitatem* is the object of *redacturum*, to which *se* is the subject.

14. § 1. **Vellaunoduni . . . Novioduni**: all are locatives. See on *Cenabi*, 3, § 3. *Incommodis* does duty as a noun ("reverses"), and *continuis* means "in a series," "in succession."

§ 2. **alia . . . atque**: "other than." See the note on *simul atque*, 12, § 5. From this point the whole of the chapter is in oblique narrative depending on *docet*—"he points out"—and the verbs are in primary sequence throughout. **studendum**: sc. *esse*. *Studere* is an intransitive verb governing a dative of the indirect object (*rei*). It means "to pay attention to," "to aim at." Therefore the gerund *studendum* means "a paying attention to," and *rei studendum est* (*nobis*) means "there is for us a paying attention to the matter," *i.e.* "we must attend to the matter." **ut . . . prohibeantur**: explaining *rei*, "this point, viz., that the Romans should be cut off from forage and supplies." The verb would be of the same tense and mood in direct speech.

§ 3. **id esse facile**: Vercingetorix said: *hoc est facile, quod* ("because") *equitatu abundamus et quod anni tempore sublevamur*. The only way to conquer Caesa was to starve him out by

cutting off his supplies; and this the Gauls might easily do, because their cavalry was far more numerous than was his, and could intercept his foraging-parties, and, moreover, the time of year (it was winter) was such that provisions were very scarce. This is explained in the next section. **equitatu**: *abundo*, and similar words meaning "to have plenty of," "to be rich in," require an ablative of the object. *Abundo* is only found once with a genitive.

§ 4. **secari**: because it had all been harvested and garnered into barns (*aedificia*) some months before.

§ 5. **rei familiaris**: *res familiaris* ("things connected with the household") means "property." With *neglegenda*, sc. *esse*. Vercingetorix said *neglegenda sunt*. **oportere**: in oratio recta *oportet*. † **hoc spatio**: "for such distance in all directions from Boia, as the Romans appeared able to reach to for foraging purposes." *Spatio* is an ablative of place; for *quoque versus* see on 4, § 5; *quo* is "whither." The subject of *videantur* (Vercingetorix said *videntur*) is *Romani* or *hostes*. The words *a Boia* are probably corrupt: nothing is known of any place called Boia, which it is suggested may be a name for the land of the Boii. An emendation is *ab via*, "from the route" taken by Caesar's army, which is certainly what is meant. The country was to be laid desolate on all sides, so that there should be nothing left for the Romans to live on.

§ 6. **ipsis**: in direct speech: *nobis copia suppetit, quod, quorum . . . geritur . . . sublevamur*.

§ 7. **Romanos**: he said: *aut inopiam non ferent Romani, aut . . . procedent; neque interest, ipsosne interficiamus impedimentisne exuamus* (subjunctive of indirect question), *quibus . . . possit* (causal subjunctive).

§ 8. **interesse**: the impersonal verb—"it makes no difference whether," etc. The alternative is expressed by the following indirect questions. Each member of the alternative is introduced by *-ne*, which is unusual. *Utrum . . . an* or *-ne . . . an* are as a rule employed; see on 5, § 6. **ipsos**: here of the Romans, but above (§§ 3, 6), and again in § 10, *ipsi* is used of the Gauls.

§ 9. **oppida**: even the walled towns, besides the hamlets and isolated buildings mentioned in § 5. A Gallic *oppidum* was mostly built of wood, and so was easily destroyed by fire. **quae non . . . sint**: "such as are not safe," etc. The antecedent is indefinite, and the clause would therefore require the (consecutive) subjunctive even in direct speech. **suis**: Vercingetorix said *nostris*, "our side." **tollendam**: if the *oppida* were left intact, thither the Gauls would collect all their stores and cattle for safety, and all these would fall into the Romans' hands, for they would take the *oppida* one after another.

§ 10. **videantur**: in direct speech: *si haec . . . videntur, illa multo gravius aestimo*, etc. *Haec* refers to what has gone before, *illa* to the accusative and infinitive clauses which follow. **gravius aestimare**: sc. *se*. For *gravius*, which is an adverb, we should usually have *graviora*, agreeing with the following object-phrases,

**accidere**: *accidere* is properly used of evil fortune, as *contingere* of good. *Evenire* may be said either of good or bad luck.

**15.** § 1. **amplius xx urbes**: "twenty towns and more." *Viginti urbes* is nominative. The words *plus, amplius, minus* are frequently thus used adverbially, and without affecting the case of the numeral which follows them.

§ 2. **solacii**: dependent on *hoc*; cp. *consilii*, **12**, § 6, for this use of the partitive genitive. The nature of their consolation is expressed by the clause *quod . . . confidebant*, "the fact that they were confident," etc. **prope explorata victoria**: an ablative absolute denoting cause, "as their victory was well nigh certain." *Exploratus* means "examined," "ascertained," and so "assured," "certain."

§ 3. **deliberatur**: impersonal, "there was a debate." **incendi . . . defendi**: *utrum*, or an equivalent word, is (as frequently) omitted before the first of the alternatives which formed the subject of debate. Cp. the note on **14**, § 8. **placeret**: in speaking of debates, *placet* is the equivalent of the English "resolved that." So *placet mihi*, "it is my opinion" *or* "decision."

§ 4. **omnibus Gallis**: dative of the person concerned, passing into dative of the possessor, "at the feet *of* all the Gauls." Such a use is exceedingly common in poetry. **ne . . . cogerentur**: the words *procumbunt ad pedes* denote an act of supplication, and are followed accordingly by a clause denoting the matter of the request. In English we must supply some such words as "and besought them," etc. **praesidio et ornamento**: predicative dative, "which was the fortress and ornament." **sit**: the subjunctive shows that the remark was part of the speech of the Bituriges who wished to have Avaricum spared. So below in § 5, *quod habeat*, "because, *as they said*, it had."

§ 5. **circumdata**: nominative, agreeing with *urbs*, which is the unexpressed subject of *habeat*. *Circumdare* has these constructions: (1) *circumdare urbem muro*, and (2) *circumdare murum urbi*, both meaning "to surround the city with a wall." Hence in the passive it is equally good Latin whether we say (1) *urbs muro est circumdata*, or (2) *murus circumdatus est urbi*. The first construction occurs here.

§ 6. **dissuadente . . . Vercingetorige**: the ablative absolute here has a concessive force, "though Vercingetorix at first tried to dissuade them." **precibus . . . misericordia**: ablatives of the cause. **volgi**: subjective genitive, "because of the pity felt for them *by* the mass of the Gauls." [It is *subjective* genitive because, if we used the corresponding verb, we should say *volgus* (subject) *miseretur*.] **oppido**: "for the town," dative of advantage to be joined with *deliguntur*.

**16.** § 1. **longe**: "sixteen miles away from Avaricum." Caesar is fond of this irregular use of the adverb in expressions of measure, where an adjective or adjectival clause would be expected. **ab Avarico**: the preposition is only omitted with names of towns when

"motion from" is intended. In expressions of measure the preposition is regularly used; hence *Avarico abit*, "he departs from Avaricum," but *castra ab Avarico duo milia passuum absunt*, "the camp is two miles distant from Avaricum." **milia passuum xvi**: accusative of extent.

§ 2. **certos**: "regular," *i.e.* they were scouts specially told off to do this particular duty. **in singula . . . tempora**: "for every hour of the day." **agerentur**: subjunctive of indirect question. So *vellet*, below. Notice the use of the preposition here, "*in the neighbourhood of* Avaricum," not "*at* Avaricum," which would be the locative (*Avarici*).

§ 3. **omnis**: accusative, as in 9, § 2. **necessario**: an adverb—"of necessity," as in 14, § 4. It must not be joined as ablative of the standard of comparison with *longius*, which is used absolutely, "somewhat far," "farther and farther." **procederent**: there are two ways of taking the clause. (1) Most editors translate, "*whenever* they perforce advanced farther (than usual)," in which case the subjunctive is that constantly used by writers of a later age (Livy, Tacitus, etc.) to express repeated occurrence. The objection to this is that Caesar seems never to use the subjunctive elsewhere in this way, but invariably the indicative (see the note on *ubi quae*, 3, § 2). (2) But it is better to regard the clause as causal, "because they used of necessity to go farther and farther afield." The Gauls had laid the country waste, so that to procure supplies at all the forage-parties had to go greater distances every day, and consequently were daily more widely separated both from their camp and from one another. **quantum**: "in so far as," an adverbial accusative of extent. **ratione**: "by thoughtfulness." **occurrebatur**: impersonal, "measures were taken to defeat his plans." *Nostri* in Caesar's language of course means his own troops, the legions. **ut . . . iretur**: consecutive, "in such fashion that." *Iretur* is again impersonal, "expeditions were made."

**17.** § 1. **Caesar**: this is the subject of *coepit* at the end of the sentence. **quae intermissa**: the antecedent is *partem*, "which (side of the town) being unenclosed." *Intermissus* means "not occupied by," "free from," *i.e.* "not surrounded by." **aggerem**: in besieging a town the first thing done by the assailants was to construct an *agger*, a broad bank of brushwood and earth running straight towards the town-walls, and rising gradually until, when at last it reached the wall, it was of the same height as the wall itself. It served as a broad road up which a storming-party could advance to the assault. **vineas**: "penthouses," "mantlets." In constructing the *agger* the attacking troops were of course constantly exposed to the missiles thrown from the walls by the besieged. To afford protection against these, two courses were adopted. Firstly, in the body of the *agger* there were constructed passages, propped and roofed with timber, along which there could be carried further loads of earth and brushwood to be thrown down at the end of the *agger* which faced the wall. These passages were lengthened as the *agger* increased in

length. Secondly, those troops who were employed in carrying earth along the top of the *agger* and "tipping" it over the upper edge were provided with *vineae*—light sheds of timber covered with hides. These moved on wheels, and, as the *agger* grew, one *vinea* was pushed forward (*agere*) and another brought up from behind, and so on; so that there were provided continuous covered ways along which the sappers might move. **turres**: as a further protection for the besieging forces, movable wooden towers of considerable height were pushed up the *agger* as it advanced. From these were discharged arrows and other missiles which prevented the besieged from showing themselves upon the wall in any large numbers. **circumvallare**: "to surround with siege-lines." The rivers and marshes prevented a blockade, and there was nothing for it but to make a regular attack. The object-clause of *prohibeo* is here expressed by an infinitive; the subjunctive with *ne* or *quominus* might also be used.

§ 2. **alteri . . . alteri**: "the one people . . . the other." The first refers to the Aedui, the second to the Boii. For the plural, see the note on *utrisque*, 7, § 2. **non magnis facultatibus**; the ablative absolute is causal, "since their resources were not great."

§ 3. **summa . . . aedificiorum**: the accumulation of ablatives is unusual. *Exercitu affecto* is a concessive ablative absolute (see 1, § 1, note); *difficultate* is instrumental; *tenuitate*, *indiligentia*, and *incendiis* are causal, explaining how the difficulty was caused. The main statement begins at *nulla tamen*. **usque eo ut**: "to such a degree that." **complures dies**: accusative of duration. **caruerint . . . sustentarent**: notice the difference in tenses. The perfect *caruerint* is used merely to denote that the fact was so, without any assertion as to its order in the chain of events; the imperfect denotes the long continuance of a state. Distinguish *careo*, "to be without," and *egeo*, "to be in need of." Both take an ablative (*egeo* also a genitive) of the thing wanting. **ab iis**: "*from* them" (not "*by* them"). The expression is unusual: *nulla vox eorum* would have been sufficient. **superioribus**: here of order in time, "earlier." The ablative is the usual object-case with *indignus*.

§ 4. **quin etiam**: "nay," a very strong formula for introducing a further statement. It is often written as one word, *quinetiam*. **singulas**: "one by one." **ferrent**: he said *si . . . fertis, dimittam*. *Diceret* depends, like *appellaret*, on *cum*.

§ 5. **complures annos**: cp. *complures dies*, § 3, above. The construction is oratio obliqua, the governing verb being, as often, omitted. It is easily supplied from *petebant*. What they said was: *sic . . . te imperante meruimus, ut nullam . . . acceperimus, nusquam . . . discesserimus. Hoc . . . feremus, si . . . reliquerimus* (future perfect). *Praestat . . . interierunt, parentemus*. **meruisse**: *mereor* ("deserve," "earn"), deponent, is more commonly found than the active *mereo*. The word is here used in the technical sense of "serving" as a soldier, the full phrase being *stipendium merere* (or *mereri*), "to earn a soldier's wage."

§ 6. **loco**: "in place of," *i.e.* "as" a disgrace. **laturos**: *ferre* here has the rather unusual sense of "to regard," "account." **si . . . reliquissent**: this clause explains the preceding *hoc*. For the tense of *reliquissent*, representing the future perfect of direct speech, see the note on *transissent*, 5, § 5.

§ 7. **parentarent**: *parentare* is "to do sacrifice in honour of dead ancestors," "to sacrifice to the shades of the dead," and takes a dative of the person so honoured. Here it is used metaphorically the legions will revenge their murdered countrymen by "sending down to the infernal shades" the Gauls of Avaricum. The syntax is unusual: ordinarily we should have the infinitive *parentare*, co-ordinate with *perferre*. Here, however, the imperfect subjunctive is used, probably by confusion with such a sentence as *perpessus est omnia potius quam indicaret*, "he suffered everything rather than give information," where the second verb, being contrasted with a finite tense (*perpessus est*), is regularly put into the subjunctive.

§ 8. **tribunisque militum**: see Introd., § 6.

**18.** § 1. **propius Avaricum**: *prope* always requires an accusative, and the same case is used by the best Latin writers with *propius*, and even with *proxime*. **expeditis**: light-armed skirmishers who accompanied each mounted man in action. This method of fighting was borrowed by the Gauls from the Germans. **consuessent**: in direct narrative, *consuerunt*, "are wont." *Consuesco* is "to accustom oneself." The perfect therefore means "to *have* accustomed oneself," and so "to be wont." **profectum**: sc. *esse*. It is a principal verb, and parallel to *movisse* above. **pabulatum**: supine expressing purpose; see on *rogatum*, 5, § 2.

§ 2. **silentio**: "in silence." For this use of the modal ablative, cp. 11, § 7, note.

§ 4. **sarcinas**: the personal baggage of the legionaries, which was laid aside and piled together before the troops went into action. When this was done, the soldiers drew the shields from their coverings, put on their helmets, and got their weapons ready (*arma expedire*).

**19.** § 1. **ab infimo**: "from the bottom"; see on *pro certo*, 5, § 6.

§ 2. **fiducia**: ablative of the cause. *Loci* is objective genitive, "their confidence *in* their position." †**in civitates**: these words should probably be omitted, as they do not mean anything more than *generatim* ("by classes," *i.e.* "according to nations"), and were most likely added by a copyist to explain that word. **saltus**: the higher ground amid the marshes; we might render "passes." **obtinebant**: the word may rarely be translated by "to obtain." It means "to occupy," "hold."

§ 3. **haesitantes**: sc. *Romanos*. They would get into difficulties in the swamp. **ut**: consecutive, expressing a general inference to be drawn from the foregoing remarks as to the nature of the ground and the position of the combatants. **qui . . . videret**: "whoso had seen" or "if a man had seen." The clause is conditional in force, and hence the mood. So *qui . . . perspiceret*, below. **propinquitatem**: *i.e.* the

short interval of space that separated the two armies. **paratos**: sc. *Gallos*. **aequo Marte**: "on equal terms." Mars was the Roman god of war, and hence his name is often used for *bellum*, "war" or "battle." Hence *Mars aequus* means a battle in which the chances are equally balanced. **inani simulatione**: "that they were parading themselves in an idle pretence," because they were well aware that Caesar would not venture to attack them in so disadvantageous a position, and felt themselves perfectly safe in pretending to a thirst for battle which was all sham (*inanis*).

§ 4. **milites**: accusative, object of *edocet*. **possent**: subjunctive of virtual oblique oration, marking that this reason for their *indignatio* was that which the soldiers themselves gave. **quanto detrimento**: ablative of the price with *constare*, "at what a loss." So *morte*.

§ 5. **quos cum**: the oblique narration depends on a verb of saying understood from *edocet*. What he said was: *cum vos sic . . . video, ut nullum pro mea laude periculum, recusetis, summae ego iniquitatis condemnari debeo, nisi vestram vitam mea salute habebo cariorem*. **animo**: ablative of respect, "in point of courage." **iniquitatis**: verbs of accusing and condemning take a genitive of the indictment and (in the case of *capitis*) of the penalty.

**20.** § 1. **proditionis**: genitive of the charge, like *iniquitatis*, in **19**, § 5. *Insimulatus* is a participle. **Romanos**: for the accusative after *propius*, cp. **18**, § 1, first note. The clauses from *quod castra* down to *venissent* explain the various grounds upon which his accusers charged him with treachery. Hence the use of the subjunctive (virtual oblique oration). **sine imperio**: this means "without leaving anybody in command."

§ 2. **accidere potuisse**: "could not have happened." The Latin for "I could have done," "I ought to have done," is *facere potui, facere debui*, the present infinitive being employed where English uses the perfect.

§ 3. **respondit**: this is the first principal verb in the chapter. The subject is *Vercingetorix*, § 1. **movisset**: he said: *quod . . . movi, (id) factum (est) . . . vobis hortantibus; quod . . . accessi, (id) persuasum (est) . . . se . . . defenderet. Quod*, "as for the fact that," is in reality an adverbial accusative of respect. **persuasum**: in full *id persuasum esse sibi*. † **qui . . . defenderet**: "seeing that it defended itself by its own natural strength." Other readings are *qui se ipse sine munitione defenderet* and *qui se ipse ut munitione* (as with a fortification) *defenderet*.

§ 4. **desiderari**: "ought not to have been missed by you," "ought not to have been complained of as wanting by you in a marshy spot," where cavalry would be useless; for the tense see on *accidere potuisse*, § 2, above. He said: *opera . . . debuit . . . fuit utilis, quo sunt profecti*.

§ 5. **summam imperii**: "the chief command"; *summa* is here a substantive. **consulto**: "on purpose," "of design." In direct speech *discedens tradidi*, etc.; *cui rei . . . videbam, . . . voterant*.

§ 6. **intervenerint**: this represents *intervenerunt* of direct speech. In full the sentence would be: *Si Romani casu intervenerint, fortunae habendam esse gratiam; si alicuius indicio vocati intervenerint, huic habendam esse gratiam.* **habendam**: *gratiam habere* is "to feel gratitude," *grātias agere* "to return thanks." *Huic* refers to *alicuius*, the man, whosoever he was, whose *indicium* caused the Romans to appear.

§ 7. **desiderare**: here in the less usual sense of "seek for." He said: *nullum imperium . . . desidero, quod . . . possum, quae iam est mihi . . . explorata; quin etiam vobis remitto, si mihi magis honorem tribuere quam a me . . . videmini.* **remittere**: sc. *se* as subject, *imperium* as object; "he resigned his power to them." **videantur**: "seemed (to themselves)," *i.e.* "fancied."

§ 9. **paucis ante diebus**: "a few days previously"; cp. *multis ante diebus*, 9, § 4, note.

§ 10. **pronuntiarent**: deliberative subjunctive, "what they were to say." **si . . . possent**: "to see if they could find," etc. The clause is really the protasis (*if*-clause) of a hypothetical sentence, of which the apodosis is omitted. It is similarly omitted in English. If inserted it might be, *e.g.*, "meaning to take" any corn, etc., if they could find it. The genitives are partitive, depending on *quid* indefinite.

§ 11. **premi**: they said: *premitur omnis exercitus . . . sufficiunt . . . possunt; itaque statuit imperator, si nihil . . . profecerint*, etc. **cuiusquam**: *quisquam* is only used in clauses which are actually or by implication negative. **profecissent**: from *prōficio*, "I advance," "make progress." **triduo**: "*within* three days."

§ 12. **proditionis**: genitive of the charge, as in § 1, above. **opera**: "by whose doing"; *opera* denotes "exertions," "energy." **sanguine**: "bloodshed," "loss of life." **victorem**: here used as an adjective, "victorious." **finibus**: instrumental ablative, *lit.* "shelter with (*i.e.* in) its boundaries."

21. § 1. **armis concrepat**: "clashed (with) their arms," *i.e.* they struck their swords against their shields. **in eo**: "in the case of a man." For the perfect *consuerunt*, "they are wont," cp. **18**, § 1, note. **summum esse**: supply from *conclamat* a verb to control the oblique narration. **dubitandum**: for the gerund implying necessity, see the note on *studendum*, **14**, § 2. **maiore ratione**: ablative of manner, "on better methods," "with more skilful strategy."

§ 3. **constare**: as the protasis is future (*retinuissent* = *retinuerint* of direct speech), so also should the apodosis be in the normal form of the hypothesis (*constaturum*). The present, *constare*, makes more prominent the imminence and certainty of the result. So in Livy *Si vincimus, omnia nobis tuta erunt*, "if we win, all will be well with us." **summam victoriae**: "the whole credit of the victory."

22. § 1. **cuiusque modi**: "of every description," genitive of quality with *consilia*. Of course *cuiusque* is from *quisque*. **summae**

**genus sollertiae**: "a people of great ingenuity." **ab quoque**: "by each" person in each particular case. We should say "by *any* one."

§ 2. **laqueis falces**: the *falces* were strong hooks at the end of heavy beams, used by the besiegers to tear down the fabric of the enemy's wall. The Gauls foiled them by throwing nooses (*laquei*) about them, and so hauling them up by aid of windlasses (*tormenta*) into the town (*introrsus*). *Destinare* (from—*stanare*, connected with *stare*, "stand") is used in its primary sense "to bind fast," "fix." **cuniculis**: "mines" (*lit.* "rabbit-holes"). As fast as earth was piled up on the *agger*, the Gauls carried it away from underneath (*sub-trahebant*) by means of mines. **eo scientius**: "and all the more skilfully, because," etc. (literally "by that the more skilfully").

§ 3. **turribus contabulaverant**: "carried up the wall in storeys by means of towers," *i.e.* they constructed towers of several storeys all along the part of the wall near the Romans. **coriis**: the raw hides served to prevent the wooden towers from being set on fire.

§ 5. **quantum**: "just as much as the mound had daily raised our siege-towers." These towers (*turres*) were on wheels, and moved on the top of the mound (*agger*). Consequently they rose as the *agger* rose with the earth that was being added to it day after day. See the note on *aggerem*, 17, § 1. *Exprimere*, here "to raise," is the opposite of *deprimere*, "to depress." **commissis . . . malis**: "by joining the upright beams of their own towers." Each *turris* on the Gallic wall was made as follows: four upright corner-poles (*mali*, "masts") were planted in the ground, and from one to another of these were lashed the cross-beams which formed the floors (*tabulationes*). The uprights were of great height, and ran up to a considerable distance above the floors ordinarily constructed. When, however, the floors of the besiegers' towers had reached nearly to the same altitude as those of the Gauls, the latter heightened their own towers by adding other storeys as required. Thus they were able always to command the Roman towers from the superior height of their own. **apertos cuniculos**: (i) either "the mines which we opened," *i.e.* the mines constructed by the Roman engineers, or "the mines which they (the Gauls) discovered and broke into." The Romans tried to drive mines beneath the walls, and so enter the town: the Gauls detected the attempts, and frustrated them by laying masses of rock in the way, or by planting logs and stakes, or by throwing in combustibles which set fire to the timber supporting the roofs of the mines and so destroyed them. (ii) But the following is a more probable explanation. The *cuniculi* were not "mines," but the passages and galleries which were made in the body of the *agger* for the purpose of conveying earth and timber near the enemy without exposing the soldiers to danger (see on 17, § 1). *Apertos* will then refer to the open or exposed end near the wall of Avaricum. **praeusta et praeacuta materia**: "timbers (stakes) sharpened at the end, and burnt at the point" (to render them tough). **maximi ponderis**: genitive of quality with *saxis*.

23. § 1. **hac fere forma**: "as a rule of the following fashion." **trabes**: "straight (*directae*) beams all in one piece" (*perpetuae in longitudinem, lit.* "continuous throughout their length"). Another rendering of *directae* is "at right angles to the line of the wall," and of *perpetuae in longitudinem*, "along the whole course of the wall." **distantes**: "distant two feet one from another." The distributive *binos* is used because *each pair* of beams lay side by side the same distance apart. The accusative is one of extent. *Paribus intervallis*, "at equal intervals," is to be joined with *collocantur* as an ablative of manner.

§ 2. **introrsus**: "at the inner end." The beams lay side by side along the whole line which the wall encircling the *oppidum* was to take, and they were braced together at the end which was nearest to the interior of the town by cross-beams. **multo aggere**: *agger* means the "earth," "rubble," etc., of which a bank is made, as well as the "bank" itself; "with quantities of earth." **intervalla**: the space of two feet, which separated the outer ends of the beams one from another, was filled with large stones; the face of these stones and the ends of the beams formed the outer surface of the wall.

§ 3. **alius . . . ordo**: "another series of beams" like the first, and arranged in exactly the same fashion. **ut**: consecutive, "in such a way that." **neque . . . contingant**: the beams of the upper layer did not lie exactly upon those of the lower, but alternately, so that the ends of the beams of the upper layer rested on the stone-work which separated those of the lower. **paribus**: literally "but being interrupted by like intervals (*i.e.* separated by similar two-foot spaces), each set of beams by the several pieces of stone-work laid between, they are closely braced together." *Arte* is an adverb, often but wrongly spelt *arcte*.

§ 4. **dum . . . expleatur**: in describing the continuance of an action "until" an object is attained, "until" must be rendered by *dum* with the subjunctive (subjunctive of purpose). **iusta**: "proper." *Iustus* means "that which is complete in all its parts": so *iusta legio* = "a legion with its full complement of men"; *iustum proelium* = "a regular battle."

§ 5. **cum . . . tum**: in this order the meaning is "both . . . and . . ."; but *tum . . . cum . . .* = "at the moment when." **alternis . . . saxis**: ablative of attendant circumstances (ablative absolute)—"with its timbers and stone-work alternating." The completed wall presented a chequered appearance, the ends of the beams alternating with the masses of stone-work between, both horizontally and vertically. **ariete**: "battering-ram," a heavy beam shod with a mass of iron, and hung upon chains, so that if drawn back it would swing forward when released and deliver a blow upon the opposing surface. It was a formidable engine against a wall of small stones or of timber alone, but of little use against the butt end of a massive beam as long as the wall was thick, bedded in earth and socketed between masses of rock. **materia**: "timber-work." **pedes . . . revincta**: "braced on the inner side, for distances of forty feet in

each case, by solid beams," *i.e.* the tie-beams which served as braces were each forty feet long.

24. § 1. **toto tempore**: "all the time." †**latum**: the width (330 feet) is so enormous that many editors think *longum* is the proper reading, not *latum*. A width of 50 or 60 feet would allow an ample number of troops to attack the enemy's wall, but as the *agger* rose gradually from the ground to a height of 80 feet, its length would be considerable. **pedes**: in each case the accusative is one of extent.

§ 2. **contingeret**: if the meaning was that the *agger* was fired *just at the moment when* it nearly touched the wall, and when Caesar was up all night, etc., we should have the indicative mood (*contingebat, excubabat*, etc.). The subjunctive (causal) shows that the nearness of the *agger* to the wall, and Caesar's activity, etc., were, remotely, so many *reasons* why the works should be fired. **consuetudine**: "according to his habit." For the ablative of manner thus used, see on *periculo*, 1, § 5. **vigiliam**: see the note on 3, § 3. This would be about midnight. **succenderant**: they had run a mine beneath the *agger*, and set fire to the timbered passages or galleries within it. See the notes on 17, § 1, and 22, § 5.

§ 3. **toto muro**: "all along the (enemy's) wall." So *tota provincia*, 1, § 1. **portis**: ablative of the "road by which" the sally was made. **turrium**: *i.e.* the siege-towers of the Romans, standing on the *agger*.

§ 4. **curreretur . . . ferretur**; in oratio recta the verbs would be present subjunctive (dubitative or deliberative), *quo curratur?* and *quo feratur?*—"whither are we to run?" (*lit.* "is it to be run"), etc. *Quo* here is the adverb.

§ 5. **partitis temporibus**: the hours for being on duty were divided amongst the remaining legions. Note that the perfect participle of the deponent *partior* is used in a passive sense. **reducerent**: they moved on wheels, and so could be drawn beyond the reach of the flames. **interscinderent**: to prevent the spread of the flames, the soldiers made a cut through the mound. In doing this, they would be greatly helped by the *cuniculi* or galleries which ran right through it from front to back.

25. § 1. **eo magis, quod**: "all the more because." For this use of *eo*, cp. *eo scientius*, 22, § 2. **pluteos**: breastworks of wicker, usually covered with raw hides, surrounding the various *tabulationes* of the towers and serving to screen the men stationed there. **apertos**: "now that they were unprotected (by the *plutei*)"; predicative, agreeing with *milites* (*Romanos*) understood. *Nec* = *et non*, and the negative belongs to *facile adire*, not to *animadvertebant*. **recentes**: predicative, "came up unwearied to-take-the-place-of (*suc-*) such as were tired." *Succederent* and *arbitrarentur* both owe their mood to *cum* at the beginning of the sentence. The principal verb is *accidit*. **vestigio temporis**: literally "footprint of time," *i.e.* "crisis." **quod dignum**: "a fact which, as it seemed worth recording, we have

thought should not be omitted." It is not uncommon for a writer to use the plural when speaking only of himself.

§ 2. **per manus**: "from hand to hand." **e regione turris**: "opposite to our tower," a constant phrase in Caesar. So we have *e regione solis*, "right opposite to the sun"; *e regione oppidi collis*, "a hill over against the town." **proiciebat**: compounds of *iacio* drop the initial *i* (*j*) in all present-stem forms. So *conicere*, *subicit*, *adiciat*, etc. **scorpione**: the *scorpio* was a military engine for discharging arrows or bolts. The Gaul is said to be killed by the machine, instead of by its bolt, much as we speak of a man being "shot by a rifle."

§ 3. **munere**: *fungor* requires an ablative of the object. **alteri**: "the second," as in **11**, § 1. For the dative, cp. *defessis*, § 1, above.

§ 4. **est . . . factus**: notice that the verb introduced by *priusquam* is indicative when referring to a definite point of past time.

**26.** § 1. **successerat**: *succedo* is here used absolutely—"to be successful." Contrast the use in **25**, §§ 1 and 3. **profugere**: *consilium ceperunt* is equivalent to *constituerunt*, and takes an infinitive, as does *constituo*.

§ 2. **silentio**: "in the dead of night." The ablative is one of time, and the meaning is different from that in **11**, § 7. **iactura**: "loss"; the metaphor is derived from the tossing (*iacĕre*) overboard of goods from a sinking ship. **perpetua**: predicative, "continuously." **ad insequendum**: "in the matter of pursuit," cp. *ad capiendam fugam impediret*, below, § 3.

§ 3. **in publicum**: "out of doors," an example of the adjective used as a noun. **impediret**: subjunctive, as part of the prayer of the women (oblique petition).

§ 4. **eos**: their husbands and the other men. **recipit**: "leaves room for," "allows of."

§ 5. **quo timore**: "by fear of which," like *haec fama*, **8**, § 4. Join *ne . . . praeoccuparentur* with *perterriti*.

**27.** § 1. **operibus**: here "engines," such as *scorpiones*, *ballistae* hurling large stones, catapults, and rams. *Directis* means "arranged in a row in front."

§ 2. **in occulto**: "secretly"; contrast *ex aperto*, "openly." **aliquando**: the word means both "at some time or other" and "at last." The latter is the meaning here. **qui primi**: the adjective is predicative —"who should have been first to scale the wall." *Ascendissent* corresponds to *ascenderint* (future perfect) of Caesar's own words.

**28.** § 1. **deiecti**: "hurled down," "driven down" by the Romans. **foro**: *forum* is a purely Roman term, and means the open place found in every Italian town, especially the Forum of Rome. Here it is applied to the Gallic *oppidum*. **cuneatim**: "in wedge formation." It was the only formation admissible in a confined space, and the best adapted for breaking out of the town. **hoc animo, ut**: "with the design of." **veniretur**: impersonal, "if there was any advance

in their path (*obviam*)." **acie instructa**: *aciem instruere* is "to draw up (troops in) a line of battle." Hence *acie instructa depugnare* = "to fight in set order," as opposed to the haphazard conflicts which would usually mark the storming of a town.

§ 2. **in aequum locum**: the lower ground within the walls. **circumfundi**: again impersonal—"men were pouring round the whole length of the wall." *Muro* is ablative of place where. **ultimas . . . partes**: *i.e.* those farthest from the point at which the Romans were entering.

§ 4. **quisquam**: *i.e.* of the Roman soldiery. **studeret**: consecutive subjunctive (generic). We use "to"—"there was none to care for plunder." **Cenabi**: either locative, "at Cenabum" (cp. 3, § 3, note), or genitive dependent on *caede*.

§ 5. **milium xl**: genitive of quality with *qui* (*numerus*), *circiter* being an adverb. **incolumes**: predicative, "made their way in safety."

§ 6. **multa iam nocte**: ablative absolute, "it being now far on in the night"; so *multo die*, "late in the day." **ne qua**: with *seditio*. The feminine singular of the indefinite *quis* or *qui* is indifferently written *quae* or *qua*. **oreretur**: *orior* and *potior*, verbs of the fourth conjugation, form some persons of the imperfect subjunctive as if they belonged to the third conjugation. Thus we regularly find *oreretur* and *orerentur* instead of *oriretur* and *orirentur*. **ut . . . curaret**: a consecutive clause, as if *ita* had preceded *excepit*, "received in such fashion that." **procul in via**: "along the road for a great distance," to see that the fugitives did not turn aside. **disparandos**: the accusative and gerundive is the regular construction with *curare* in the sense of "to see to" a thing's being done; e.g. *pontem faciendum curat*, "he sees to the making of a bridge." **ad suos**: "to their own kin, to such part of the camp as had originally been allotted to each tribe." *Pars castrorum* is transferred to the relative clause. The 10,000 Gauls who had been sent to defend Avaricum belonged to different tribes, and such as escaped were separated and posted in the camp with their respective friends.

29. § 1. **admodum**: literally "up to the limit," *i.e.* "quite." **animo**: the ablative is either one of respect ("in point of courage") or of separation ("from their courageous attitude").

§ 2. **non virtute**: supply *dixit* to introduce the oblique oration. **in acie**: "in regular battle." See on *acie instructa*, 28, § 1. **rei**: objective genitive dependent on *imperiti*. *Fuerint ipsi* represents *fuimus* or *fuistis* of direct speech.

§ 3. **errare**: the subject, *eos*, is to be supplied from *si qui*, "if any," equivalent to "whoever."

§ 4. **sibi**: he said: *mihi numquam placuit . . . testes vos ipsos habeo, sed factum est*, etc.

§ 6. **adiuncturum**: sc. *se*. He said: *adiungam . . . efficiam*. **orbis terrarum**: "the circuit of the earth," "the whole world."

§ 7. **quo**: final, "in order that." *Sustinerent* represents *sustineatis* of direct speech. So *instituerent* = *instituatis*.

**30.** § 1. **animo**: "in courage"; ablative of respect. **tanto . . . incommodo**: the ablative absolute may be rendered by a concessive ("although") clause. **neque . . . et**: the negative belongs to both verbs, which *et* couples in one. **in occultum**: *abdere* in Caesar regularly takes the accusative with *in*; e.g. *abdidit se in silvas*, "he concealed himself in the woods."

§ 2. **re integra**: "while their fortunes were unimpaired," *i.e.* before the occurrence of the catastrophe at Avaricum.

§ 3. **ex contrario**: we say "*on* the contrary." **in dies**: "from day to day." This adverbial phrase is only found in expressions denoting increase or diminution.

§ 4. **castra munire**: *munire* is "to erect walls (*moenia*) about anything," and *castra munire* is to "fortify" a camp in the Roman fashion with a ditch and banks of earth. So *munire viam* is to "make" a road, because Roman roads were laid on raised causeways. **laboris**: objective genitive. *Suesco*, "to grow used to," requires a dative, or *ad* with the accusative; but *insuetus* takes a genitive (like *peritus*, "skilled in"; *sagax*, "versed in," etc.) in the sense of "having no experience of" a thing. **imperarentur**: subjunctive, because the verb upon which the clause depends is in that mood.

**31.** § 1. **adiungeret**: sc. *sibi*—"win over."

§ 2. † **capere**: supply as object *reliquas civitates*, and translate "he chose out suitable men, in order that each might be able most easily to entrap them either by crafty speeches or on the score of good fellowship." The clause expresses purpose, and hence the mood of *posset*. There is another reading, *capi* for *capere*, and *earum principes* for *eas* in § 1. In this case *quisque* will refer to the *principes*, "men fit for this purpose, by whose crafty arguments or friendly attitude the several chiefs might be won over."

§ 4. **quem et quam**: with this twofold question cp. *quantum quodque*, 4, § 8. *Ante* is a preposition and governs *quam*. The indirect questions (*quem . . . velit*) depend on *imperat* as involving the idea of "declaring." **expletur**: "was made good."

§ 5. **amicus**: to give a prince the style of "Friend of the Roman People" was one of the Roman Senate's methods of seeking to make him a faithful ally without framing any definite treaty with him. **et quos**: equivalent to *iis quos*, the antecedent being omitted. **conduxerat**: *conducere*, "to hire," is the converse of *locare*, "to let out"; cp. Livy's use of *conducti* in the sense of "hired soldiers," "mercenaries."

**Ch. 32-53.**—*Caesar stayed some time at Avaricum after the storming of that town. He then decided a dispute which had arisen as to the chief magistracy of the Aedui, and, in the hope of settling the war by a decisive blow, marched on Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni. A skilful piece of strategy enabled him to cross the Elaver* (Allier), *and on appearing before Gergovia, he formed a large*

*camp on the east, which he connected by means of a double trench with a smaller camp on the height of La Roche Blanche to the south of the town. While engaged in the siege he was much harassed by the disaffection of the Aedui. Two Aeduan nobles, Convictolitavis and Litaviccus, while leading some Aeduan troops to assist him in the siege, caused them to mutiny by the declaration that Caesar had put to death the Aeduan hostages with him. The news of the revolt led the Aedui in Bibracte to massacre many Roman merchants who had settled there. Caesar quelled the mutiny among the troops, but his hazardous situation prevented him from inflicting any punishment upon the mutineers. After several cavalry skirmishes had been fought round Gergovia, Caesar made a general attack on the fortress. His men penetrated the camp of the Gauls, which was situated just beneath the city walls, and some of them even scaled the wall of the fortress itself; but the Gauls outside rushed in to the rescue, and the assailants were outnumbered and slain. The attack ended in failure. Caesar's troops fought their way back to their camps with some difficulty, and Caesar himself, after offering battle to Vercingetorix in the plain, drew off from Gergovia, intending to make his way with all speed to Labienus and the four legions in Northern Gaul.*

[Refer to Index for **Avaricum**, Decetia, Senones, Parisii, **Elaver**, **Gergovia**.]

**32.** § 1. **dies**: accusative of duration. **ex labore**: as often, *ex* means "after."

§ 2. **tempore**: instrumental ablative with *vocaretur*, "summoned by the time of the year." **sive . . . sive**: "to see if . . . or"; the conjunctions have here the same force as *si* in 20, § 10, where see note. **oratum**: supine expressing purpose.

§ 3. **summo esse**: the construction is oratio obliqua throughout the remainder of the chapter. **singuli**: "one at a time." **uterque eorum**: *uterque* of itself means "each of two," but *eorum* is here added for the sake of clearness. *Obtinere* means "to hold," not "to obtain."

§ 4. **alterum . . . alterum**: "the one . . . the other." **familia**: ablative of origin, joined to such verbs as *nascor*, *gigno*, etc., either with or without a preposition (*ex*, *ab*). **potentiae . . . cognationis**: genitives of quality or description. *Cognatio* means his "clan" or kinsfolk. **proximo anno**: "in the year (next) preceding." **gesserit**: equivalent to *gessit* of direct speech.

§ 5. **suas**: sc. *esse*. Literally—"there were of each of those two his own following," *i.e.* "each of the two rivals had his own following." *Clientela* is, strictly speaking, an abstract noun—"the position of a client" (see on **4**, § 1). Here it is used for the concrete, *clientes*, and includes all who owed any degree of service or attachment to the chiefs—slaves, debtors, dependents, retainers, and voluntary partisans.

§ 6. **quod si**: "as to which, if," *i.e.* "and if." *Quod* is in reality an adverbial accusative of respect. **alatur**: in direct speech—*si . . . aletur, pars cum parte . . . confliget.* **eius**: *i.e.* "of Caesar."

**33.** § 1. **consuessent**: subjunctive of indirect question. The principal sentences in this long period are (1) *huic . . . existimavit*, (2) *ipse . . . statuit*, (3) *senatum . . . evocavit.* **aluisset . . . ornasset**: subjunctive of virtual oblique oration, the words expressing Caesar's thoughts at that time. **atque ea pars**: *atque* couples *descenderet* and *arcesseret* in co-ordinate dependence upon *ne.*

§ 2. **huic rei praevertendum existimavit**: "he considered that attention should be given first of all to this matter," *i.e.* "that this business must have precedence of everything else." *Praeverto* is here used in the sense "to turn one's attention first to." **legibus**: ablative, "by the laws of the Aedui." *Iis* is dative of the indirect object with *liceret.* **quod . . . non liceret**: the verb is subjunctive of virtual *oratio obliqua*, and the meaning is "because, *as Caesar heard* (or *as the Aedui* said), it was not lawful, etc." **iure . . . legibus**: *ius* is a wider term than *lex.* The latter is *written* law only; the former includes *unwritten* and customary law, precedents, etc. As the laws of the Aedui would not allow of Caesar's summoning either of the rivals to come to him (for each claimed to be the lawful magistrate, and therefore unable to quit the land), Caesar met them at the border town of Decetia. **quos inter**: the preposition here follows its case, "those betwixt whom lay the quarrel."

§ 3. **eo**: to Decetia. **doceretur**: the subject is *Caesar.* What he was taught is expressed by the clause *fratrem . . . renuntiatum (esse).* **alio . . . atque**: "other *than*"; see on **12**, § 5. **oportuerit**: in direct speech, *oportuit* (sc. *renuntiari*). **renuntiatum**: *renuntiare* is the technical word used of the Roman magistrate who presided at an election and "returned" a candidate as elected (literally, "reported" his name to the people). *Fratrem* is Cotus, *fratre* is Valetiacus. The two were brothers, and the election was illegal because (1) it was made in secret by only a few of the electors, (2) in an unlawful place, (3) at an unlawful time, and (4) it broke the law which forbade the holding of office by two brothers of the same family. **cum . . . vetarent . . . prohiberent**: the subjunctives are concessive. The ablative absolute *vivo utroque* is conditional, "if (*or* as long as) the other of the two was alive." **intermissis magistratibus**: "whenever there was an interruption in the succession of magistrates." Whenever a magistrate laid down his office he might name a successor, provided he complied with the proper conditions. Otherwise the priests elected another to take his office.

**34.** § 1. **controversiarum**: the usual genitive with *obliviscerentur*, a verb of forgetting. **eaque . . . exspectarent**: what Caesar said was: *exspectate a me ea praemia quae merueritis. Meruissent* therefore represents the future perfect of direct speech. **quae . . .**

"**disponeret**: "which he might place"; the clause is final, and hence the mood.

§ 2. **secundum flumen**: *secundum* (literally "following") means "according to." Therefore *secundum flumen* means "along the course of the river," whether up-stream or down-stream. In this case Caesar's march lay up-stream, for which the Latin is *adverso flumine*. "Down-stream" is *secundo flumine*. Cp. 58, § 5.

§ 3. **ab altera . . . parte**: "*on* the other side." In many such phrases the Latin idiom denotes "motion from," where we prefer "rest in."

35. § 1. **uterque utrique**: "while each army was in sight of the other." Join *utrique* as a dative of the possessor (person interested) with *conspectu*. **e regione castris**: "pitched each its camp opposite to that of the other"; cp. 25, § 2, *e regione turris*. The genitive (as in § 3 below) is the more usual case with *e regione*.

§ 2. **partem**: accusative of duration of time.

§ 4. †**distractis**: Caesar had in all six legions. Of these two stayed in ambush by the ford, while the remaining four marched on. Lest the Gauls should see that the column was now reduced by two legions, Caesar drew off a few companies from each legion (there were ten cohorts to a legion), and marshalled these as two regular legions. Thus the column still presented the appearance of six legions, but each apparent legion was in reality only two-thirds of a *iusta legio*. The reading is corrupt, the word *distractis* being only one amongst a number of conjectures for *captis*, which is the reading of the MSS. and means nothing.

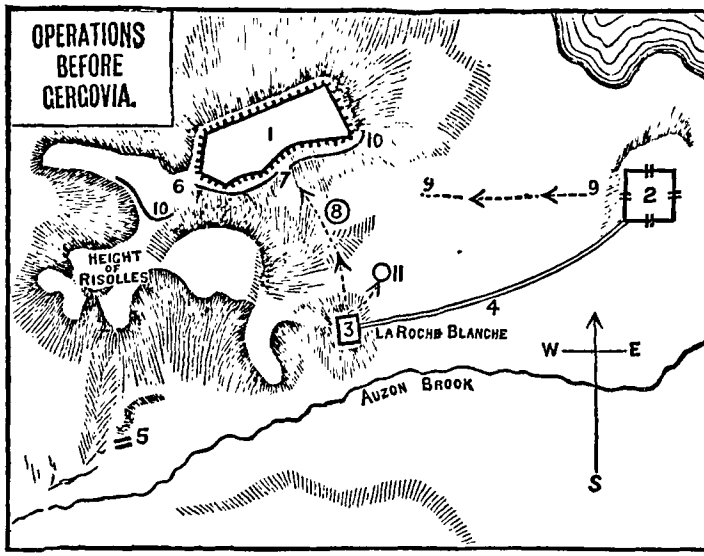
§ 5. **perventum**: sc. *esse*. Caesar waited until evening, when he knew that the legions he had sent on had pitched their camp. Of course Vercingetorix, watching from the opposite bank of the river, had also gone away after the four legions, so that the way was clear for Caesar. **pars inferior**: the bridge had been built of timber secured to piles (*sublicae*) standing in the bed of the river. Vercingetorix cut through these piles at the water-line, and so destroyed the upper part of the bridge, but left the stumps of the piles in their original positions.

§ 6. **reliquas copias**: the four legions which had moved on to mislead Vercingetorix.

§ 7. **magnis itineribus**: the same as *longis itineribus*, "by forced marches."

36. § 1. **quintis castris**: "on the fifth day." Roman troops, when on the march, constructed a regular camp at the close of every day's movements, so that their marches could be calculated by the number of "camps" (*i.e.* days) occupied. **in altissimo monte**: Gergovia was built on a mountain 2500 feet high. **omnis**: accusative plural. **expedisset**: *expedire* (from *ex*, and *pes*) means literally "to free the feet," "to release anything from an embarrassing situation." Translate "to arrange for," "to secure."

§ 2. **collocaverat**: Vercingetorix stationed his forces, according to their tribes, on the plateau encircling Gergovia on the south. See plan under (10). **civitatium**: if a 3rd decl. noun (masc. or fem.) is imparisyllabic (*i.e.* contains more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative), the genitive plural usually ends in *-um*, but the longer form in *-ium* is found occasionally in this and similar nouns. **omnibus eius iugi collibus**: "all the elevations on the ridge," especially the height of Risolles: see plan. **qua . . . poterat**: impersonal, "wherever there was a view downwards."




1. Gergovia.
2. Castra Maiora.
3. Castra Minora (36, 5; 43, 1).
4. Duplex Fossa (36, 7).
5. Detached Legion (45, 5).
6. Point at which Gauls expected attack (44, 3; 48, 1).
7. Point at which the attack was made (45, 10; 46; 47).
8. Point where Caesar halted the 10th Legion (47, 1).
9. March of the Aedui (45, 10).
10. Advanced wall of Gauls (40, 3), between which and the town wall lay their camps.
11. First position of T. Sextius (49, 1).

§ 3. **videretur**: the subjunctive implies that the clause is part of the command introduced by *iubebat*.

§ 4. **quin . . . perspiceret**: "*without* examining." For *quin*, see on **11**, § 8, note. **interiectis sagittariis**: the archers were interspersed amongst the horsemen. They are the same as the *expediti* mentioned in **18**, § 1. **quid . . . suorum**: the order is *quid animi et virtutis esset in quoque suorum*.

§ 5. **collis**: the hill now known as La Roche Blanche, about 1900 feet high. See the plan. **circumcisus**: "scarped."

§ 6. **ab his**: *i.e.* the Gauls.

§ 7. **posset**: "before help could come"; for *priusquam* with the subjunctive of purpose, cp. 1, § 6. For the dative of the predicate (*subsidio*), see on 4, § 10. **loco**: the usual ablative with *potior*. **collocavit**: the legions entrenched themselves, and their camp was the *minora castra* of the next clause. **duodenum**: gen. of *duodeni*. The shorter form of the genitive is the older, and is often used in the inflexion of the distributive adjectives. It is found also in names of coins (*nummum*), measures (*modium*), in some names of tribes, and (in poetry) in *vir*, *deus*, *divus*. **maioribus**: the camp of the major part of the army, E.-by-S. of Gergovia. It is marked (2) in the plan. **tuto**: an adverb, "in safety." The soldiers marched along the causeway, protected by a ditch on either side.

37. § 1. **familia**: for the ablative of origin, see 32, § 4, note.

§ 2. **imperio**: dative of purpose, "destined for command." *Esse* must be supplied with both *liberos* and *natos*.

§ 3. **unam esse**: as usual, a verb must be supplied to control the following oblique oration (§§ 3-5). He said: *una est . . . quae . . . detinet; . . . reliquae continentur; . . . locus non erit.*

§ 4. **esse se**: i.e. *ego non nullo . . . rum affectus, sic . . . obtinuerim, . . . tribuo.* Distinguish *non nullus*, "some one," from *nullus non*, "every one." Similarly *non nihil*, "something," and *nihil non*, "everything"; *non numquam*, "sometimes," and *numquam non*, "always," etc. **sic tamen, ut**: "but only in so far as he had maintained before Caesar a perfectly just claim." Convictolitavis considered that he had not been better treated than the equity of his claims demanded.

§ 5. **cur . . . veniant**: the clause will remain unaltered in direct speech, the subjunctive being deliberative, "why are the Aedui to come?" "why should the Aedui come?"

§ 6. **vel**: "even." This is a constant meaning of *vel* when joined singly as an adverb with any word in a sentence; e.g. *vel sapientissime*, "in the very wisest manner."

§ 7. **mitterentur**: the mood is due to that of the clause (*ut . . . praeficeretur*) upon which this depends. **reliqua**: neuter plural accusative, subject of *agi*. **placeat**: subjunctive of indirect question.

38. § 1. **milia . . . xxx**: accusative of extent.

§ 2. **proditionis**: "accused of treason," genitive of the indictment. **indicta causa**: literally, "with their cause unpleaded," *i.e.* "without a hearing."

§ 5. **collocuti**: sc. *esse*, "because they were alleged to have intrigued."

§ 6. **sibi consulat**: "to take measures for their safety," the reflexive pronoun referring to *Aedui*, the subject of the principal sentence.

§ 7. **consilii**: we say "a question *for* debate."

§ 8. **an dubitamus**: *an* is the particle which introduces the second and subsequent alternatives in questions direct or indirect, the first alternative being marked by *utrum*. Where, as here, *an* seems to be used in a *single* direct question, the first alternative is omitted as

being too manifest to need mention. *An* (which is virtually equivalent to *num*) accordingly marks the only *reasonable* alternative and expects an emphatic negative reply. *An dubitamus?* = "Can it be that we doubt?" = "Surely we must not doubt." **animi**: partitive genitive with *quid*. **persequamur**: jussive subjunctive, "let us avenge." So *interficiamus*.

§ 9. **eius praesidii fiducia una erant**: "who were accompanying him under the guarantee of his protection." *Una* is here the adverb, "in his company." **ipsos**: *i.e.* the *cives Romani*, the owners of the stores and goods.

§ 10. **simili . . . atque**: "in like fashion as he had himself done." See **12**, § 5, note on *simul atque*. **suas iniurias**: "wrongs done *to* themselves," the adjective doing duty for an objective genitive.

**39.** § 1. **loco**: local ablative, "born in the highest station." **domi**: "at home," locative. **una**: an adverb, "together (with him)," as in **38**, § 9. **pari . . . dispari**: ablatives of quality or description. *Gratia* here means "influence." **ab eo**: i.e. *a Caesare*.

§ 3. **defert**: *defero* is the technical word for "laying an information" against a man, "betraying" him; cp. the substantive *delator*, "informer."

§ 4. **provideat**: we should expect *se providere* because the oratio recta is *provideo*, but the clause, though really a principal one (= *et id futurum esse provideo*) is through the influence of the relative treated as subordinate, and thus the verb is put into the subjunctive. **levi momento**: "of slight moment," "of small account." The ablative is one of price. *Momentum* (= *movimentum*, from *moveo*) means "what causes movement," especially the "weight" which causes a balance to rise or fall.

**40.** § 1. **hoc nuntio**: "by reason of this message." **expeditas**: a "flying column," in light marching order and not encumbered with baggage (*impedimenta*) or siege-train.

§ 2. **contrahenda**: the *castra* was always exactly proportioned to the number of men within it. Accordingly, when four legions were withdrawn, the camp (which had been constructed for six) ought to have been remodelled and reduced to the size proportionate to the remaining two legions. To leave two legions to defend a camp large enough for six was to give to each soldier nearly twice as large a portion of the defences to guard. **posita in celeritate**: sc. *esse*, "it seemed that everything depended on speedy action." **praesidio**: dative of the predicate.

§ 4. **necessario tempore**: ablative of time, "at so critical a moment." **itineris**: the genitive depends on *labore*. **omnibus**: *i.e.* all his own cavalry. He wished to show Litaviccus' followers that they had been deceived, and that he was ready to forgive them.

§ 6. **manus tendere**: to lay aside one's weapons and stretch out the hands was a sign of surrender.

§ 7. **patronos**: both *patronus* and *cliens* were technical terms in

Rome. The *patronus* was originally a patrician who undertook to protect the interests of non-citizens, in return for certain services rendered by them. These were his *clientes*. Gradually, however, the relations between *patronus* and *cliens* altered, and though the old names survived they bore a new meaning, every wealthy Roman being the *patronus*—"protector"—of numbers of poorer citizens or Italians, or even provincials. The Gallic *patronus* stood to his *clientes* much in the position in which a feudal baron in the Angevin times stood to his tenants, serfs, and retainers.

**41.** § 1. **qui . . . docerent**: final subjunctive. *Conservatos* agrees with *eos* understood as the antecedent to *quos*. **potuisset**: oblique oration, as being part of the report of the messengers.

§ 2. **quibus**: "by whom"; the dative is the usual case found with the gerundive to denote the agent. Inasmuch as the camp at Gergovia was now three times too large for the forces left there, the whole of these forces were compelled to stand on the defensive at all hours, with no opportunity for resting, for they were in all only just sufficient to man the ramparts. See the note on **40**, § 2. **isdem**: i.e. *iisdem*, dative with *quibus*.

§ 3. **usui**: predicative dative. The *tormenta* were "engines" which threw (*torquere*) stones and darts, and so kept the enemy from venturing to come to close quarters.

§ 4. **eorum**: i.e. *Gallorum*. **obstruere**: the camp had four gates, one in each side. Fabius was walling up two of these, so as to have but two left to defend. **pluteos**: "breastworks of timber"; see on **25**, § 1. Under ordinary circumstances the *castra* was defended only by a palisade of stakes (*valli*) driven into the top of the *vallum*.

**42.** § 1. **ab Litavicco**: *viz.* the news that he had induced the 10,000 Aeduan troops to declare against Caesar (ch. 38). **ad cognoscendum**: "time to find out (whether the news was true)."

§ 2. **habeant**: the subjunctive is consecutive (*i.e.* denotes result), "so that they take idle hearsay for ascertained fact."

§ 3. **abstrahunt**: sc. some of the *cives*.

§ 4. **adiuvat**: "abets their course of action when its direction was now determined." *Proclinatus, lit.* "bending forward," means "inclining *or* verging to a consummation." **ut . . . pudeat**: the subjunctive is final, "in order that they may be ashamed."

§ 5. **fide data**: *fidem dare* is "to give a pledge" that a man shall be unharmed, "to give assurance of security." **idem facere**: "to do the same," *i.e.* to leave the town. **negotiandi**: "of trading"; these men were *negotiatores*.

§ 6. **impedimentis**: *exuo* takes an accusative of the person robbed, an ablative of that of which he is deprived. **diem noctemque**: accusatives of duration, "for a day and a night."

**43.** § 1. **publico consilio**: "under the sanction of the State at large."

§ 2. **quaestionem**: the technical term for a "judicial inquiry." **publicant**: "make public property," *i.e.* confiscate to the State. **gratia**: frequently used like *causa* (*e.g.* next line) with a dependent gerund or gerundive, and with the same force, "for the sake of." **sui purgandi**: "of clearing themselves." *Purgandi* is gerund (not gerundive), and *sui*, "of themselves," is objective genitive.

§ 3. **capti**: "induced by the profits got from looting." *Compendium* is "anything weighed (*pendo*) together," "kept together," and so "saved," whence it comes to mean "profit." **ea res**: i.e. *direptio bonorum*. So many were implicated that the punishment would fall on all alike.

§ 5. **discederet**: "how he was to withdraw." So *contraheret*, "how he was to unite." In the direct questions the verbs would be in the deliberative subjunctive, *quem ad modum discedam?* "how am I to withdraw?" **a Gergovia**: "from *the neighbourhood of* Gergovia." The simple ablative *Gergovia* would mean "from Gergovia" itself. **fugae**: *similis* is usually followed by a genitive of a person compared, a genitive or dative indifferently of a thing compared.

**44.** § 1. **minora**: "the lesser camp"; see on **36**, § 7, note. **hominibus**: *nudare* has the same construction (accusative and ablative) as *exuere*; cp. **42**, § 6. The following relative *qui* refers to *collem*, which was one of the peaks of the hills (*les Risolles*) to the W.S.W. of Gergovia. **prae multitudine**: "by reason of the numbers"; this is a frequent meaning of *prae* in negative sentences.

§ 3. †**hunc . . . angustum**: this is the reading of the MSS., excepting that *locum* is inserted, for if it be omitted, then the words *hunc . . . silvestrem . . . angustum*, which are all masculine, must refer to *dorsum*, which is a neuter noun. However, it is quite possible that both *dorsus* (masc.) and *dorsum* (neut.) were in use. Translate: "that the ridge of the height was almost level, but that the particular spot where there was an approach to the other side of the town was narrow and covered with wood." The ridge of Risolles was mostly open and level, but it was connected with the plateau of Gergovia by a neck of high ground (*les Goules*), up one side of which there ran from the plain a gentle ascent, narrow and thickly wooded. Under cover of these woods the Gauls expected that Caesar would make an attack, and if he could do so, then not only would Gergovia be beset from east, south, and west at once, but the Gauls on Les Risolles would be cut off from their comrades. Accordingly, they moved towards the defile to fortify it, leaving unoccupied their previous position on Les Risolles. The spot is marked (G) in the plan. **alteram**: as Caesar's main camp was on the east of Gergovia, the "other" side was the western one.

§ 4. **huic . . . loco**: verbs of fearing may take a dative of that *for* which one feels anxiety. **aliter . . . quin**: *nec aliter sentire* is equivalent to *nec dubitare*, after which *quin* is the normal construction. **uno colle**: *i.e.* La Roche Blanche.

**45.** § 1. **turmas**: to each legion there was attached a body of 300 cavalry divided into ten *turmae*. **de media nocte**: "*after* midnight," a regular meaning of *de* in expressions of time; cp. *de tertia vigilia*, "in the course of the third watch."

§ 2. **impedimentorum**: "pack-horses"; as a rule *impedimenta* (plur.) = "baggage." **collibus**: "by way of the hills," ablative of the "road by which."

§ 3. **ostentationis causa**: "for show." The few regular cavalry would ride closer up to the Gallic position, so that the Gauls might be led to believe the bogus-cavalry were also regulars.

§ 4. **a Gergovia despectus**: *despectus* is a substantive, "a view from Gergovia." **tanto spatio**: ablative of the cause, "owing to the great distance." **certi quid esset**: the genitive is partitive, the mood that of an indirect question—"what was the truth."

§ 5. **silvis**: instrumental, "*with* the woods." We say "in."

§ 6. **illo**: "thither." Another form is *illuc*.

§ 7. **insignibus**: here a substantive. Such would be the blazons on shields, the crests on helmets, etc. **signis**: the "standards," of which there was one to each cohort, besides the more important "eagle" (*aquila*) of the whole legion. **raros**: "few at a time," "in small bodies."

§ 9. **una celeritate**: "by rapid movement alone." **occasionis . . . proelii**: "the *coup* was one which depended on opportunity rather than on fighting"; the genitives belong to the predicate. Caesar meant that the affair was to be a surprise, not a battle.

**46.** § 1. **recta regione**: "in a straight line." **intercederet . . . aberat**: "if there intervened no windings, the town wall lay"; note the use of the indicative in the apodosis, subjunctive in the protasis; cp. the similar exaggeration in Vergil's *et ni longe alium late iactaret odorem, laurus erat* (for *esset*), "and were it not that it cast abroad a far different scent, a bay-tree it was" (instead of "would have been").

§ 2. **quicquid**: *circuitus* is a partitive genitive with *quicquid*, and *huc* refers to the measurement above mentioned, *viz.* 1200 paces, "whatever windings had been added to this distance," etc. From brow to foot the distance was 1200 paces, but the slope was steep, and, to make the ascent easier, the road wound about irregularly instead of running in a direct line. **id**: this is the nominative, and refers to *quicquid circuitus*.

§ 3. **a medio . . . colle**: "pretty nearly at the middle of the hill side." For this meaning of *ab* to denote "locality," not "motion from," cp. *ab altera parte*, **34**, § 3. **in longitudinem**: "all along the hill." **ferebat**: *fero* is not uncommonly used thus intransitively like *patior*, "as the character of the height allowed." **qui . . . tardaret**: subjunctive of purpose.

§ 4. **trinis**: with nouns which have no singular, or none in the sense desired (like *castrum*, sing. "fort," plur. "camp"), the cardinal adjectives are regularly replaced by the distributives: e.g.

*singulae litterae*, "one letter"; *bina castra*, "two camps"; *trina castra*, etc. Note that *terni*, the other form of the distributive of *tres*, is not used in this connection.

§ 5. **ut meridie conquieverat**: "just as he had gone to rest at midday.'

**47.** § 1. **receptui . . . iussit**: "ordered the retreat to be sounded." There are two ways of explaining the phrase: either (1) *cani* is impersonal and *receptui* a dative of the purpose, "ordered that there should be sounded (a signal) for a retreat"; or (2) *cani* is personal, the subject being originally *signum receptui*, and *signum* has been allowed to drop out of the phrase, "ordered the signal for retreat to be sounded." **signa constituit**: to "bring the standards to a halt" was the signal for halting the whole legion. Other common expressions are *signa inferre* or *proferre*, "to advance the standards," "to charge"; *signa relinquere*, "to desert"; *signa movere*, "to break up camp"; *signa convertere*, "to wheel about."

§ 2. **satis magna**: "*quite* large," a common meaning of *satis*. **retinebantur**: the imperfect frequently implies *effort to do* the verbal action.

§ 3. **adeo . . . quod**: the more usual sequence is *adeo . . . ut* (the meaning being the same in either case, *quod* really being an equivalent to *ut id*), and the subjunctive consecutive.

§ 5. **prominentes**: "leaning forward" over the wall. **passis manibus**: cp. *manus tendere*, 40, § 6, note. *Passis* is from *pando*.

§ 6. **non nullae**: "some." **per manus**: "by the hands" of those standing on the wall.

§ 7. **neque commissurum**: "and would not allow any one to scale the wall sooner than did he." **manipulares**: men of the same *manipulus*. There were three maniples in each cohort, and consequently thirty in the entire legion; see Introd., § 6.

**48.** § 1. **alteram**: the point marked (6) in the plan. The attack narrated in the last two chapters was delivered against the southern wall of the town. **primo**: an adverb—"at first," answered by *inde*, "next," lower down. **oppidum . . . teneri**: the accusative and infinitive depends on *nuntiis*—"messages that the Romans were in possession of the town." **eo**: towards the spot where the Romans were assaulting the wall.

§ 4. **loco . . . numero**: ablatives of respect, "in point of position (for they were fighting up-hill and without defences) or numbers." **spatio**: "long continuance." **recentes atque integros**: sc. *Gallos*.

**49.** § 1. **pugnari**: impersonal, "the battle was raging." **suis**: for the dative, cp. *huic loco*, 44, § 4. **sub infimo colle**: "at the foot of the hill," *i.e.* of La Roche Blanche. *Infimus collis* = "the bottom of the hill," just as *summus mons* = "the top of the mountain."

§ 2. **loco**: ablative of separation, "from their position." **quo**

**minus**: *terrere* ("to deter"), being equivalent to a verb of hindering, takes the usual construction of such verbs, viz. *quominus* or *quin* and the subjunctive.

§ 3. **paulum . . . progressus**: Caesar had halted (47, § 1) immediately beneath the southern slope of the hill of Gergovia. He now moved somewhat eastward, while Sextius brought up his own men on the left, some way to the westward of Caesar. Thus, if the Gauls ventured to pursue the Romans down the hill, they would find Sextius threatening their own right wing (*ab dextro latere*, § 1) and Caesar covering the left.

**50.** § 1. **nostris**: best taken as possessive dative ("of our men") with *latere*. The *latus apertum* is the right flank of Caesar's army; the left was protected by the force under T. Sextius. These Aedui had been ordered to assault Gergovia from the east; see 45, § 10. **ab dextra parte**: "*on* the right"; cp. *ab altera parte*, 34, § 3. **manus distinendae**: "to extend *the enemy's* line," *i.e.* to force the Gauls to extend their front for the purpose of resisting so many different attacks.

§ 2. **similitudine armorum**: they were equipped like the Gauls in the army of Vercingetorix. **umeris exsertis**: ablative of quality or description (here used as a predicate), "they were observed to be with (*i.e.* to have) the right shoulder bared." †**pacatorum**: the MSS. have *pacatum*, which is meaningless. *Pacatorum* means "of friends." There is another reading, *pactum*, "agreed upon." **consuerat**: imperfect in sense, "was wont to be."

§ 4. **manipularibus**: the men of the maniple who were under his orders. Each maniple consisted of two centuries, and so was commanded by two centurions.

§ 6. **post paulum**: "after a little while"; *post* is a preposition.

**51.** § 1. **aequiore**: "more level," and therefore better suited for the movement of the legionaries.

§ 2. **exceperunt**: "came to the relief of," or "covered."

§ 3. **infestis . . . signis**: *i.e.* they rallied and faced the enemy again.

§ 4. **paulo minus septingenti**: "little less than seven hundred men"; cp. *amplius XX urbes*, 15, § 1.

**52.** § 1. **sibi**: dative of the person interested; "for themselves," "on their own account." **recipiendi**: sc. *sui*, "retreating."

§ 2. **posset**: *possum* is frequently used as a verb of complete predication rather than as a mere auxiliary. So here—"what was the value of," "what were the effects" of the different character of the ground. **sensisset**: subjunctive of virtual oblique oration, "which, *as he said*, he had himself realised." For *quod ipse* there is a v.l. *quid ipse*, in which case *sensisset* is another indirect question, parallel to *quid . . . posset*.

§ 3. **quanto opere**: "just as greatly as," answered by *tanto opere*,

"so greatly," below. **reprehendere**: supply *se* as subject. **se**: according to rule *se* should refer to the speaker, *i.e.* Caesar. It may, however, refer to the subject of a dependent clause when no ambiguity is involved. So here it refers to *milites*, the subject of *existimarent*.

**53.** § 1. **animo**; "in mind"; local ablative, as in the phrase *animo propmere*.

§ 2. † **nihilo magis**: "none the more," *i.e.* though Caesar offered to give battle. There is another reading, *nihilo minus*, "none the less," *i.e.* though Vercingetorix saw the legions posted in battle array, he yet came down into the plain and fought a cavalry engagement. **secundo**: *secundum proelium* is the Latin for "a victory."

§ 3. **factum**: sc. *esse*. Caesar's only wish was to be able to retire from Gergovia without seeming to have been defeated, as in reality he was.

§ 4. **eoque**: instrumental ablative, "by means of the river," *i.e.* "over the river."

**Ch. 54-68.**—*The failure of Caesar before Gergovia was the signal for the Aedui to revolt. Accordingly, when he arrived before Noviodunum* (Nevers), *in the Aeduan land, he found that the people of that town, after massacring the Roman settlers, had broken down their bridge and set their city on fire. He found a ford higher up, and so crossed the Loire, shortly after which he effected a junction with his lieutenant Labienus not far from Agedincum. While Caesar had been absent in the south, Labienus had been conducting, against the Parisii and other tribes of the north, a campaign in which he made his way down the Seine as far as Lutetia* (Paris), *and gained a decisive victory over the Gauls and their leader Camulogenus. Thus reunited with Labienus, Caesar determined to march southwards to the Province, leaving Northern Gaul to take care of itself. As he was proceeding leisurely through the country of the Lingones, he was met by Vercingetorix. A great battle ensued, in which Caesar was in considerable danger, but the German squadrons in Roman pay broke the onset of the Gallic knights, and Vercingetorix sustained a great defeat. He at once retired, with all his forces, to Alesia, in the neighbourhood of Dijon, where a large camp had been fortified to hold* 80,000 *men.*

[Refer to the Index for **Liger**, Noviodunum, **Bibracte**, Cevenna, **Agedincum**, Lutetia, Aulerci, **Sequana**, Metiosedum, Remi, Lingones, Treviri, Segusiavi, **Allobroges**, Gabali, Helvii, Ruteni, Cadurci, Mandubii, **Alesia**.]

**54.** § 1. **opus esse**: *opus*, "need," may be constructed either with a clause or a noun. In the first case it requires an accusative and infinitive, as here; in the second there are two alternatives: (1) the ablative, e.g. *opus est labore*; or (2) the nominative, e.g. *opus est*

*labor.* **ipsos**: *i.e.* Viridomarus and Eporedorix, to whom *horum* also refers in § 2.

§ 3. **discedentibus his**: dative of the indirect object with *exposuit.* **agris**: the usual ablative with a verb of depriving. **stipendio**: "tribute." Caesar is alluding to the condition of the Aedui when oppressed by Ariovistus. See Introd., § 2.

**55.** § 4. **Bibracti**: a locative of the third declension. The ablative *Bibracte* might also be used, just as *Carthagini* and *Carthagine* both mean "at Carthage." **commodum**: "opportunity."

§ 6. **Bibracte**: accusative of the goal of motion. Note the Latin for "to the magistrate at Bibracte."

§ 7. † **cui . . . usui**: predicative dative. We say "*of* any use." There is a v.l. *quo*, the adverb, "in any direction," "for any purpose."

§ 8. **frumenti**: the partitive genitive depends on *quod*, "as much of the corn as," etc.

§ 9. **iniciendi**: for the spelling, cp. 25, § 2. **si . . . possent**: "to see if they could"; cp. 20, § 10, note. **provinciam**: Gallia Narbonensis.

§ 10. **multum**: adverb, "greatly." **ex nivibus creverat**: "had been swollen by (the melting of) the snows."

**56.** § 1. **sibi**: the usual dative of the agent with the gerund. **essent**: subjunctive because of the final force of *priusquam.*

§ 2. **ne . . . converteret**: this clause is dependent on *impediebat.* **nemo non**: "every one"; see on *non nullus*, 37, § 4. **cum . . tum**: "both . . . and," as in 23, § 5. **indignitas**: "unworthiness," "dishonour." The word often means "indignation." **oppositus mons Cevenna**: "the fact that the Cevennes lay in the way." **Labieno . . . legionibus**: datives, "he was exceedingly anxious for Labienus and the legions."

§ 4. **pro . . . necessitate**: "in view of the emergency." It was a difficult ford, but sufficient under the circumstances. **liberi ab aqua**: "clear of the water." **qui . . . refringeret**: final subjunctive. The horsemen rode into the stream, and halted in line from bank to bank, thereby breaking the force of the current, and forming, as it were, a dam, below which the infantry could wade across. **incolumem**: predicative, "without loss."

§ 5. **in agris**: this means stored in barns among the fields, for the year was not yet sufficiently advanced for any corn to be ripe.

**57.** § 1. **supplemento**: "reinforcements," consisting of the troops lately levied in Italy (1, § 1). **id**: we might have expected *ea*, agreeing with *Lutetia*, but the attraction of the pronoun to the gender of the predicate (here *oppidum*) is according to rule.

§ 2. **cuius**: i.e. *Labieni.*

§ 3. **summa**: here a noun, "the supreme command"; cp. *summa rerum*, "the government." **confectus**: the participle has a concessive force, "albeit well nigh worn out." **singularem**: "extra-

ordinary," "unique"—a meaning also borne by its derivative "singular."

§ 4. **perpetuam**: i.e. *continentem*, "continuous." **influeret . . . impediret**: subjunctive, as being part of the thought of Camulogenus; "which, *as he was aware*, opened into," etc. *Magno opere* is frequently written as one word, *magnopere*. So *tantopere* and *quantopere*.

**58.** § 1. **vineas agere**: "to bring up mantlets," to protect his men when engaged in making a road through the morass; see **17**, § 1, note. **cratibus**: "fascines" of wicker-work. They would form a foundation upon which the earth (*agger*) could be piled in order to form a road. *Agger* means, as often, "the materials of a mound." **iter munire**: "to construct a road."

§ 2. **confieri**: *confici* is the usual form of the present infinitive passive of *conficio*.

§ 4. **eo**: *i.e.* into the vessels, which were formed into a bridge of boats.

§ 5. **secundo flumine**: "down-stream." See the note on *secundum flumen*, **34**, § 2. Labienus was now on the right or northern bank of the Sequana (*Seine*).

§ 6. **e regione Lutetiae**: "opposite to Lutetia" (*Paris*).

**59.** § 1. **a Gergovia**: the force of the preposition is "from the neighbourhood of Gergovia." **audiebatur**: notice that Latin prefers the *personal* construction (*Caesar audiebatur*) where in English we use the impersonal, "it was understood that Caesar had left." So constantly with *videor*, *dicor*, etc. **secundo**: "successful." **itinere et Ligeri**: to be joined, "debarred from his line of march and from the Liger (*Loire*)," *i.e.* from crossing the Liger.

§ 2. **per se**: "voluntarily," *i.e.* without needing to be egged on by the revolt of their fellow-Gauls.

§ 3. **aliud . . . atque**: "other . . . than."

§ 4. **ut . . . lacesseret**: "how to gain," etc., the clause being an indirect question, representing a deliberative subjunctive, *ut acquiram?* "how am I to gain?" So *ut . . . reduceret*.

§ 5. **opinionem virtutis**: "reputation *for* valour." **alteram**: supply *partem*, from *altera ex parte*, above. On the north side of the river the Bellovaci were preparing to attack him, while on the south Camulogenus had marshalled his forces.

**60.** § 1. **sub vesperum**: *sub* with the accusative, in expressions of time, signifies either "immediately before" or "immediately after." **equitibus**: not "horsemen," but members of the equestrian order. **deduxerat**: the prefix implies that they had been brought *down*-stream (*secundo flumine*, **58**, § 5). **prima . . . vigilia**: it was now full spring-time, and the first watch would end between 9 and 10 p.m. **expectari**: note the change of subject. The subject of *progredi* is *naves* or *equites*, whereas that of *expectari* is *se*.

§ 3. **adverso flumine**: "up-stream"; cp. 34, § 2, note. **proficisci**: verbs of commanding (excepting *iubeo*) must in prose be constructed with *ut* and the subjunctive. Occasionally, however, they take the accusative and infinitive, but only when such infinitive is passive. Here the deponent verb is treated as if it were a true passive.

§ 4. **in eandem partem**: "in the same direction," *i.e.* up-stream. **appelli**: note that this verb is from *appellere*, "to bring a vessel to the shore."

**61.** § 1. **inopinantes**: "being off their guard."

§ 2. **transmittitur**: "put across" from one bank to the other. As contrasted with *equitatus*, *exercitus* means "the infantry" (*peditatus*).

§ 3. **sub lucem**: "about sunrise"; see on 60, § 1. **tumultuari**: impersonal, "there was a noise." **agmen**: *i.e.* the five cohorts mentioned in 60, § 3. They had been ordered to make all the noise they could, so that the Gauls imagined them to be a large army. **paulo infra**: *infra* is an adverb, "somewhat lower down the river."

§ 5. **e regione castrorum**: "over against the camp." **Metiosedum versus**: *Metiosedum* is accusative of "town whither" without a preposition, and *versus* is an adverb; cp. 7, § 2. **progrediatur**: the subjunctive is final, "in order that it might advance," "which was to advance." As the sequence is historic, we should expect *progrederetur*, but the use of the present tense makes the narrative more vivid.

**62.** § 2. **ductu**: "under the leadership"; ablative of manner without epithet or preposition. So *numero*, which comes to be a mere adverb, and when coupled with *saepe* is often written in one word (*saepenumero*). **superassent**: the mood shows the statement to be that of Labienus himself.

§ 3. **ab dextro cornu**: "*on* the right wing"; cp. *ab sinistro* (sc. *cornu*), below, § 4. **quem locum**: the usual idiomatic order, "the position which," etc. **concidissent**: "although . . . had fallen"; the clause is concessive, and hence the mood.

§ 5. **suis aderat**: "supported his followers." *Adesse* with the dative is the technical Roman term for a great man supporting his *protégés*, especially in a court of law.

§ 6. **signaque intulerunt**: *signa inferre* is "to charge."

§ 7. **loco**: ablative of separation.

§ 8. **praesidio**: "had been left as a guard," dative of the predicate. So *subsidio*, below. **neque . . . potuerunt**: "but *nevertheless* could not."

**63.** § 2. **quantum**: accusative of extent, "to so great a degree as."

§ 3. **obsides**: these hostages had been surrendered to Caesar as sureties of the good behaviour of their tribes. They had lately been seized by the Aedui (ch. 55), who had used them as a means of coercing the other Gauls into rebellion. **supplicio**: *i.e.* by threatening to put them to death.

§ 5. **summa imperii**: "the supreme command." **Bibracte**: this is not local ablative, "at Bibracte" (cp. 55, § 4), but accusative of the goal of motion after *indicitur*, "is summoned to Bibracte," *i.e.* "is summoned to meet at Bibracte."

§ 6. **frequentes**: "in crowds." This is the proper and original meaning of *frequens*, which is connected with *farcire*, "to stuff." **ad unum**: "to a man," "unanimously."

§ 7. **illi**: the Remi and Lingones. **quare . . . abessent**: indirect question. So *mitterent*. **toto . . . bello**: the ablative of time, "during the whole war," is used, though one would expect, in an expression of duration, *per totum bellum*. **neutris**: "to neither *party*." See on *alteri*, 17, § 2.

§ 8. **suscepto bello**: "now that they had declared war."

§ 9. **summae spei**: "of limitless ambition."

64. § 1. **ei rei**: for the bringing in of the hostages. **huc**: "to him," at the place appointed for the surrender of the hostages.

§ 2. **peditatu**: the ablative is the usual case with *contentus*. **factu**: the supine in *-u* stands as an ablative of respect with certain adjectives. It is in reality the ablative of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, just as the supine in *-um* is the corresponding accusative.

§ 3. **modo**: *modo*, *dum*, and *dummodo* all take the subjunctive when used as particles of proviso, *i.e.* in the sense of "provided that."

§ 7. **nihilo minus**: "none the less" (*lit.* "by nothing the less," *nihilo* being an ablative of the amount of difference). **Allobrogas**: Caesar often uses the Greek accusative plural in *-as* with the names of the Gallic tribes. **ab superiore bello**: they had revolted and had been reduced again in 61 B.C. See Index, *s.v.* ALLOBROGES.

§ 8. **provinciae**: the genitive is objective, "lordship over the entire Province (Narbonese Gaul)."

65. § 1. **Lucio Caesare**; he was one of the consuls twelve years before (64 B.C.), and first cousin of Julius Caesar. Note the pregnant use of the preposition *ex*, "*drawn from* the entire Narbonese."

§ 4. **equitatu**: "in cavalry," ablative of respect. The following ablative absolute does duty for a causal clause, "because all the roads were blocked." **quas . . . pacaverat**: Caesar had invaded Germany in 55 and 53 B.C., but only for a very brief space on each occasion, and only the Ubii had really submitted to him. See Introd., § 5, p. xiv. **levis armaturae**: genitive of quality or description. These light troops would be armed with slings and bows, and would fight like those mentioned in 18, § 1, where see note.

§ 5. **adventu**: ablative of time; cp. 5, § 2. **minus idoneis**: predicative, "because the horses which they used were of small use." **equitibus**: not "cavalry," but "knights," *i.e.* members of the equestrian order who were with Caesar. **evocatis**: soldiers who had served their full number of campaigns but remained with the legion.

were known as *evocati*. One of their privileges was the right to have a horse. See *Introd.*, § 6, p. xvi.

**66.** § 2. **trinis castris**: local ablative, "in three camps." For the distributive numeral, see on **46**, § 4.

§ 3. **praefectis equitum**: this was the Roman title for cavalry officers, but Caesar transfers it to the Gauls. **fugere**: the oblique oration, depending on *demonstrat*, continues to the end of § 6.

§ 4. **parum profici**: impersonal, "little progress is being made." **reversuros**: sc. *Romanos*.

†**adoriantur**: jussive, and present tense, because depending on a primary verb (*demonstrat*). The MSS. have *adoriventur*, imperfect, as though the controlling verb were historic in time; but as all the other clauses of the speech are in primary sequence, *adoriantur* is probably right. What Vercingetorix said was *adoriamur*, "let us attack." His plan was to attack Caesar's army while it was marching towards the Province, confident that he would either capture its baggage and stores (and so starve it out), or at any rate prevent its continuing its march as proposed.

§ 5. **confidat**: he said *confido*. **dignitate**: "prestige."

§ 6. **modo**: "even a little way beyond the line of march." Vercingetorix expected Caesar's cavalry to be intimidated by the numbers of his own horsemen. **id**: *i.e.* the attack of the Gauls upon the Roman *agmen*. *Quo* is the final conjunction, "in order that." **copias**: *i.e.* the infantry. **terrori**: predicative dative.

§ 7. **ne . . . recipiatur . . . perequitasset**: the actual words of the oath were: *ne recipiatur . . . perequitaverit*, or *ne recipiar . . . nisi perequitavero*, "may I not be welcomed, . . . if I shall not have ridden."

**67.** § 1. **lateribus**: "on the two flanks," *i.e.* of the Roman line of march. **a primo agmine**: "in the direction of the van," "in front."

§ 3. **impedimenta**: when a Roman army was on the march the baggage formed the centre of the *agmen*, the legions marching before and behind it. When attacked, the legions formed in hollow square with the baggage in the centre.

§ 4. **signa inferri**: "ordered the standards to be advanced," *i.e.* "ordered a charge to be made." **aciem constitui**: "gave orders to form in fighting order," the legionaries otherwise "standing at ease."

§ 5. **ab dextro latere**: "on the right flank." **fugientes**: object of *persequuntur*.

§ 6. **ne circumirentur**: the clause depends on *veriti*.

§ 7. **proximis comitiis**: "at the last election." The allusion is to the quarrel described in ch. 32, as to the election of the annual magistrate of the Aedui. *Comitia* is the Roman technical term for an election.

**68.** § 1. **pro castris**: "in front of his camp." **Alesiam, quod**: for the gender of the pronoun, attracted to that of the predicate,

cp. *Lutetiam . . . id*, 57, § 1. **se subsequi**: *se* is object, "to follow him (Vercingetorix)."

§ 2. **quantum**: "(for) as long (a time) as," adverbial accusative of duration. **circiter**: an adverb. **novissimo agmine**: "the rear" of Vercingetorix's army. When a long line of men marches past, that part which passed "most recently" is also "last" in the line. Hence the use of *novissimus* for "last." **ad Alesiam**: "*near* Alesia."

§ 3. **equitatu**: "in point of cavalry."

**Ch. 69-90.**—*Instead of continuing his march to the Province, Caesar determined to besiege Alesia with all its thousands of defenders. He drew a line of contravallation round the whole of the enemy's works, in the course of which he inflicted a defeat on the Gallic horse. Before, however, the Roman line was completed, Vercingetorix sent away all his cavalry with instructions to seek aid from every tribe of Gaul. Their appeal met with a prompt reply, and an army of* 250,000 *warriors swept down on Alesia to relieve their countrymen. But Caesar had been expecting an attack from without, and by the time they arrived had completed an outer line of works to protect him against any external enemy. The army of relief encamped on the left bank of the little river Brenne, in what is to-day called the Plain of Laumes, and concerted a combined attack with the forces imprisoned in Alesia. But desperate as was the assault, the Romans won the day, and a second general attack, this time directed against the north-western corner of the Roman lines, was also frustrated. So great was the slaughter on this occasion, that the Gauls had no longer strength to continue the struggle, and the relieving forces dispersed. On their departure, the besieged surrendered. Vercingetorix, clad in his most splendid armour and mounted on his noblest steed, offered himself as a prisoner to Caesar. The Arverni and Aedui among the captives were dismissed without hurt by Caesar: the rest of the Gauls were sold into slavery. So ended the last national struggle of the Gauls.*

[Refer to the Index for Ambivareti, Aulerci, **Sequani**, Santoni, Ruteni, **Carnutes**, Pictones, Turoni, Andi, **Nervii**, Morini, Atrebates, Raurici, Boii, **Cabillonum**, Matisco.]

**69.** § 1. **admodum**: adverb with *edito*, "exceedingly lofty." **obsidione**: "by blockade," as opposed to *oppugnatione*, "by siege." The one process starves the enemy out, the other attempts to capture his position by engineering, as was the case at Avaricum. Distinguish also *expugnatio*, "taking a place by storm."

§ 2. **duo flumina**: the Ose Brook on the north and the Oserain Brook on the south. To the west of the town these two streams fell into the Brenne (see plan).

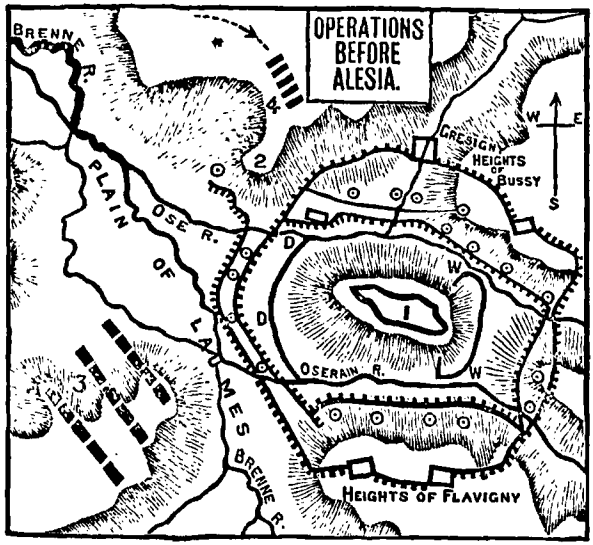
§ 3. **planicies**: the Plain of *Laumes* to the west of Alesia.

§ 4. **reliquis ex . . . partibus**: "on all the other sides," *i.e.* north, south, and east. **mediocri . . . spatio**: there was an interval of about a mile between Alesia and the hills by which it was encircled. **pari . . . fastigio**: "(hills) of an equal altitude"; ablative of description.

§ 5. **quae pars**: resumed by *huno omnem locum*, "all that part of the hill which," etc. / The wall which the Gauls had made to the east of the town is marked W W in the plan.

§ 6. **munitionis**: the wall of contravallation. **tenebat**: "embraced."

§ 7. **castra**: the substantive is here a true plural, "camps." **castella**: "redoubts," small fortified positions within the line of the wall, capable of containing *stationes* ("pickets") of a few hundreds of men. **excubitoribus**: "by watches"; we might have had *ab excubitoribus*, but, as in many military phrases, the soldiers are looked upon




□ Roman camps.
⊙ Roman *castella*.
Roman lines of circumvallation.
D D Roman ditch.
W W Gallic wall.
1 Alesia.
2 Mt. Rea.
3 Gallic army of relief.
4 Column of Vercassivelaunus (ch. 83).

as mere mechanical instruments; cp. *equitatu fugati sunt*, "they were put to flight by the cavalry."

**70.** § 1. **opere instituto**: "at the commencement of the works," *i.e.* the line of contravallation.

§ 2. **Germanos**: the cavalry summoned from beyond the Rhine by Caesar.

§ 3. **nostris**: dative of the person concerned, passing into the possessive dative. **augustioribus**: "were overcrowded owing to the gates that had been left (in the Gallic wall, *maceria*, 69, § 5)

being too narrow." The fugitives had not room to get inside the wall without crowding, and the crush was so great that they were cut down helplessly.

§ 5. **non nulli**: "some" of the German cavalry. **relictis equis**: *i.e.* they dismounted and attempted to scale the wall on foot. **pro vallo**: "in front of the *vallum* or mound" by which the Roman camp was surrounded.

§ 6. **qui . . . erant**: *i.e.* those Gauls who were stationed in the various camps between the *maceria* and the walls of Alesia. They were alarmed as much as (*non minus*) the cavalry who had just been defeated and were now crowding back within the *maceria*, and they made a general movement towards Alesia itself. Whereupon Vercingetorix closed the gates of the town, and so compelled them to remain where they were and defend the *maceria*. **ad arma conclamant**: a regular phrase, *ad arma* doing duty for a cognate accusative, just as in the English expression "to sound 'to arms.'"

**71.** § 1. **perficiantur**: final subjunctive, "before the works *could be* completed." **dimittere**: *consilium capit* has much the same force as *constituit*, and therefore takes the same construction.

§ 2. **per aetatem**: *lit.* "so far as age was concerned." So *per me licet*, "you may, for all I care." Translate, "all whose age allowed them to bear arms."

§ 3. **de communi libertate**: "on the score of the national liberty"; the preposition marks the point in which merit was achieved. More usually it denotes the *person* benefited; e.g. *optime de te meritus sum* = "I deserve well *of you*." **in cruciatum**: "give up for torture," *i.e.* "to be tortured."

§ 4. **inita**: *rationem inire* means "to make a calculation."

§ 5. **secunda vigilia**: *i.e.* before midnight.

§ 6. **capitis poenam**: "the penalty of death." *Caput* means all the rights and privileges attaching to a man's person, and so his "life" itself; and *capitis poena* means "a punishment involving one's life," as *mortis poena* means "a punishment involving one's death." **paruerint**: perfect subjunctive representing a future perfect indicative. Vercingetorix's actual words would run somewhat as follows: *qui non paruerint, capitis poena afficiam.*

§ 7. **pecus**: the noun is neuter and collective, "cattle." Distinguish *pecus, -ŭdis*, which is feminine and means a "head" of cattle, especially a sheep. **Mandubiis**: Alesia was the chief town of the Mandubii.

**72.** § 1. **haec . . . munitionis**: "works *of* this kind" is the English idiom. **pedum xx**: "twenty feet *wide*." The depth is not mentioned because it was invariably from eight to nine feet. **directis**: "going straight down," "perpendicular," and therefore of the same width at the bottom (*solum*) as at the top. The steep sides had several advantages: they rendered the ditch more difficult to fill up, and made it almost impossible for one to get out if by accident he

fell into it. This ditch is marked D D in the plan. **summae fossae**: "of the top of the ditch."

§ 2. **reduxit**: *i.e.* they were so constructed that there intervened 400 paces—considerably more than shooting distance—between the actual blockade wall and the ditch already described. The accusative *passus* is one of extent. **id hoc consilio**: sc. *fecit*. **esset . . . complexus**: *quoniam* always takes the indicative in the best Latin. The subjunctive therefore is due to virtual oblique oration, and gives Caesar's view as it occurred to his mind. So *cingeretur*. †**corpus**: if the word is right it means the "body," "whole extent," of the blockade lines. There is an emendation *opus*, which is simpler.

§ 3. **hoc intermisso spatio**: 400 paces more distant from Alesia than the twenty-feet ditch, Caesar constructed, as part of the works of contravallation, two ditches fifteen feet wide. **eadem altitudine**: not "of the same depth" as width, but "both of like depth." They were about nine feet deep. **interiorem**: the "inner" ditch would be that which lay nearer to Alesia. **campestribus . . . locis**: local ablative, "on the level and low-lying ground." All three ditches ran across the low-lying meadows between the streams of the Ose and the Oserain, in the Plain of Laumes, immediately under the western slope of the hill on which stood Alesia. On this side the Roman lines were weakest and most exposed to cavalry attacks, because they were on the dead level. Elsewhere they ran on the ridge or slope of the hills surrounding Alesia, where cavalry could not well act, and no extra ditches were there constructed.

§ 4. **post eas**: from the point of view of the Gauls besieged in Alesia, the *agger* lay on the other side of the fosses, *i.e.* still further to the west. *Agger* is the bank of earth thrown up by excavating the customary *fossa*; *vallum* is the palisading formed by driving perpendicular stakes (*valli*) into the top of the *agger*. Alongside of the palisade was erected a continuous row of *plutei*, or screens of wicker, sometimes covered with hides; this was known as *lorica*. Its top was crenelated or battlemented, the battlements being styled *pinnae*. **cervis**: stout branches resembling stag's antlers. They were planted just on the crest of the *agger*, at the base of the *plutei* and *valli*, and facing the enemy, much in the fashion of a thorn-fence. **quae . . . distarent**: consecutive, "in such fashion as to be eighty feet apart."

**73.** § 1. **materiari . . . fieri**: notice the change of construction. *Materiari*, "to collect timber," and *frumentari*, "to gather supplies," are deponents; *fieri* is passive. Join *erat* with *necesse*. **progrediebantur**: to collect wood and supplies. *Longius* means "farther and farther" or "somewhat far." **pluribus portis**: ablative of the "road by which," "by several gates at once."

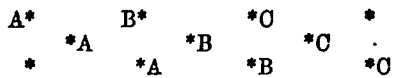
§ 2. **quo**: the final conjunction. **truncis . . . abscissis**: ablative absolute, the words *admodum firmis ramis* being a descriptive ablative, "trunks of trees with very stout boughs being felled." **quinos**: distributive, because each trench was of the depth of five feet.

§ 3. **huc**: *i.e.* into the trenches. **ab infimo**: "*at* the bottom." **ab**

**ramis eminebant**: "they stood out from their branches upwards,' *i.e.* only their branches were visible above the trench.

§ 4. **quini**: each trench carried five rows of *stipites*. The *valli* here are the sharpened extremities of the branches of the *stipites*. **cippos**: "grave-marks." A *cippus* is properly the pillar of wood or stone which was used to mark the graves of the poorer sort at Rome. Here the word is applied to these deadly *chevaux-de-frise*. With *appellabant*, sc. *milites*.

§ 5. **obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis**: "in cross lines arranged in the form of a quincunx." The black squares on a chess-board are arranged "quincunx-wise," and so are the pips on the "five of diamonds" in a pack of cards; thus—




The letters AAA, BBB, CCC, show the *obliqui ordines*. **fastigio**: *i.e.* the sides of the trench sloped outwards from the bottom to the top, unlike the *directa latera* of 72, § 1.

§ 6. **feminis crassitudine**: "of the thickness of one's thigh." The construction is unusual, because the ablative, which is one of description or quality, has no epithet strictly so called, its place being supplied by the genitive *feminis*. **ab summo**: "at the top"; cp. *ab infimo*, § 3. **digitis**: *digitus* = "a finger's breadth," or three-quarters of an inch.

§ 7. **singuli . . . exculcabantur**: "in every case a foot's depth from the bottom was rammed down with earth," *i.e.* the trench was filled up to the depth of a foot about the root of the stake, and rammed down tight.

§ 9. **ante haec**: *i.e.* still nearer to Alesia. **taleae**: "blocks of wood." They were buried just beneath the surface, so that a sharp iron hook, when driven into them, projected above the soil. All these contrivances were intended to prevent cavalry or infantry from getting within reach of the *agger* and *vallum*. **stimulos**: "spurs" or "caltrops."

**74.** § 1. **paris**: accusative plural. **diversas ab his**: "on the opposite side to the above." Outside the circular blockade wall which was intended to reduce Alesia, Caesar built a similar but longer wall to protect him against any enemy which might attack him from without. Like the inner wall, it was protected by *cippi*, *lilia*, and *stimuli* (cp. 82, § 1). **exteriorem hostem**: "an enemy (attacking) on the outer side" of the lines. Caesar foresaw that the other Gauls would attempt to relieve those in Alesia. **discessu**: ablative of cause—"by reason of the departure of the cavalry (of Vercingetorix)," which had been sent away (71, § 5) to seek relief. The word *equitatus* is an emendation for *eius*, which means nothing.

§ 2. **habere . . . convectum**: "collect and keep by them," so as to be able to stand a month's siege.

**75.** § 1. **cuique**: dative with *imperandum*, "demanded from each" of the *principes* who attended the council. Join *ex civitate* with *numerum*.

§ 2. **clientibus**: "dependents," "subjects." The same meaning is expressed by the words *sub imperio esse consuerunt*, below.

§ 3. **Sequanis**: supply *imperant*, "they demand from the Sequani," and so with all the following clauses.

§ 4. **universis**: "in a body." *Oceanum* means the Atlantic Ocean, the tribes in question dwelling in Brittany and Normandy. **quo . . . numero**: "in the number *of whom*," "including."

§ 5. **una**: "with the rest."

**76.** § 1. **opera**: "services," ablative dependent on *erat usus*, the pluperfect of *utor*. **civitatem**: *i.e.* of the Atrebates, to which tribe Commius belonged. He was made their king by Caesar. **immunem**: "exempt from burdens," "tax free." **ipsi**: Commius.

§ 3. **numerusque inibatur**: "the numbers were told over."

§ 4. **consobrino**: "cousin." **quorum . . . administraretur**: final subjunctive, "in order that the war might be carried on in accordance with their advice." They were to form a staff council.

§ 5. **qui . . . arbitraretur**: consecutive subjunctive. The English idiom is "there was none *to* deem it possible." **ancipiti**: *anceps* literally means "two-headed," "with a face turned either way." Hence, of a battle, it means an engagement in which one force is attacked from two sides at once, as would be the case with Caesar's army at Alesia. **foris**: literally "at the doors," and so "out of doors." Hence "outside" the Roman lines, *i.e.* on the side opposite to Alesia.

**77.** § 1. **die**: note the gender, "date." See on **3**, § 1.

§ 2. **suppeterent**: they actually said *dum suppetunt*, "while our strength is sufficient." As it stands, the verb is subjunctive because it occurs in a dependent clause in virtual oblique oration.

§ 3. **magnae . . . auctoritatis**: "being accounted (a man) of great authority." The case is genitive of quality. **civium loco**: "on the footing of citizens."

§ 4. **sit**: jussive subjunctive, "let my business be with them," etc. **omnium vestrum**: *vestrum* is used as the genitive plural of *tu* in a partitive sense as *vestri* is in an objective sense, e.g. *amor vestri*, "the love I bear towards you."

§ 5. **ultro**: "voluntarily." The word is connected with *ultra*, "beyond," and means "beyond what might be expected," "without compulsion."

§ 6. **dignitas**: the "worthiness" of those who suggested that the Gauls should try to cut their way out of Alesia. **potest**: i.e. *valet*, "has such power with me." *Tantum* is accusative of extent.

§ 7. **respiciamus**: jussive, "let us have an eye to."

§ 8. **animi**: partitive genitive with *quid*, *propinquis* being dative of the possessor, "what will be the feelings of our relatives?" The clause *hominum . . . interfectis* is ablative absolute.

§ 10. **an**: as often, introduces an indignant question (= *num*), "Do you doubt?" implying the answer "Surely not." **ad diem**: "by the required date," "up to time." **ulterioribus**: the defensive works which the Romans were erecting on the outer side of their lines against an enemy from without. **animi causa**: "for the sake of amusement," "to show their powers of endurance." The erection of such works was proof that the Romans were expecting the appearance of the Gallic army of relief.

§ 11. **illorum**: the Gauls forming the army of relief. **his**: the Romans. *Testibus* is predicative, "take the Romans for witnesses." The accusative and infinitive clause *appropinquare*, etc., depends on the idea of "declaring" in *testibus*.

§ 12. **consilii**: for this partitive genitive, cp. *id consilii*, 5, § 5. **facere**: sc. *est meum consilium*. . **nequaquam**: adverb modifying *pari*, "in a war by no means equal in importance to this," because then the liberties of Gaul were not at stake. **Cimbrorum Teutonumque**: the reference is to the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri and Teutones from 109 B.C. to 102 B.C. See Introduction, p. ix. **simili inopia**: "straits like ours."

§ 13. **haberemus**: an unfulfilled condition in the present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive, "if we had (now) no precedent for such a deed."

§ 14. **illi simile bello**: *lit.* "what similarity had that war (with the Cimbri) and ours (with the Romans)?" *Illi bello* is dative of the possessor with *fuit*.

§ 15. **quos**: *i.e.* the Gauls. **ullă**: with *bella*, not with *condicione*.

§ 16. **securibus**: the axes carried by the lictors who attended upon consuls and dictators, in token that those magistrates had the power to inflict the death penalty. They came to be the type and symbol of Roman sovereignty. *Securibus* is dative after *subiectă*, and *perpetuă* is ablative.

**78.** § 1. **valetudine aut aetate**: ablatives of cause, "by reason of health or years." *Valetudo* is a colourless word meaning merely "state of health," whether good or bad. *Bello* is dative. **experiantur**: the subject is *ipsi*, the Gauls in Alesia. That of *excedant* was defined by the words *ii . . . bello*, and the change of subject is somewhat abrupt. **descendant**: "have recourse to." The mood is due in the first case to the final force of *priusquam* (see note on **1**, § 6), but also to the fact that the clause is in indirect speech, it being a part of the *sententia* of the Gauls. So *morentur*, § 2.

§ 2. **illo . . . consilio**: *i.e.* the suggestion that they should resort to cannibalism. *Potius* is to be joined with *quam . . . condicionem*.

§ 3. **Mandubii**: the original occupants of Alesia. The ablative *oppido* is one of instrument, "welcomed them by means of their town."

§ 4. **omnibus precibus**: "prayers of every description."

**79.** § 1. **ad Alesiam**: "to the neighbourhood of Alesia." **exteriore**: *i.e.* on the outer side of the Roman wall of circumvallation.

§ 2. **paulum**: accusative of extent with *abditas*, "removed a little distance." *Abditus* here means "removed," "withdrawn," rather than "hidden."

§ 3. **concurrunt**: *sc.* those in Alesia.

§ 4. **proximam**: this was the twenty-foot Roman trench which lay nearest to the town.

80. § 1. **utramque**: *i.e.* so as to man both the inner wall (facing Alesia) and the outer one (facing the Gallic army of relief). **noverit**: equivalent in meaning to a present subjunctive, because *novi* is present in meaning, "I know."

§ 2. **undique**: "all round the town." **despectus**: substantive, "a view down."

§ 4. **munitionibus**: the earthworks of the *Romans* which shut in the Gauls of Alesia.

§ 5. **recte ac turpiter**: we say "what was well *or* ill done."

§ 6. **Germani**: the German cavalry enlisted by Caesar.

§ 8. **cedentes**: accusative, sc. *Gallos*.

§ 9. **ab Alesia**: "had advanced *from about* Alesia." If it were merely "from Alesia," there would be no preposition.

81. § 1. **cratium**: "hurdles" for filling up the trenches. The *scalae*, "scaling-ladders," were for surmounting the Roman *agger*, while the *harpagones* were for tearing down its *plutei*. **campestres**: "on the lower ground," in the *campus* of Laumes.

§ 2. **qua . . . possent**: the clause is final, and hence the mood. **suo**: referring to the subject of *parant*, which is the principal verb in the sentence—"the Gauls of the relief army."

§ 3. **tuba**: instrumental ablative. The *tuba* was a straight trumpet used by the Roman infantry.

§ 4. **librilibus**: possibly an adjective (*librilis* from *libra*, "pound") qualifying *fundis*, and so "slings capable of hurling stones a pound in weight." It is better to take it as a noun, meaning a weapon formed of two or three heavy stones connected by leathern thongs—the South American "bolas"—which is swung (*libro*) round and round overhead, and discharged with a revolving motion, the stones whirling round on all sides. **sudibus**: "stakes," used like pikes to thrust the enemy from the rampart. **glandibus**: leaden bullets of the shape and size of acorns, used in slings.

§ 6. **qua . . . intellexerant**: "*wherever* they (had) learnt," frequentative indicative.

82. § 1. **plus . . . proficiebant**: "they made greater progress (than did the Romans)." **stimulis**: the sharp iron hooks scattered over the ground in front of the Roman lines, as described in ch. 73. So too the *scrobes*. **pilis muralibus**: "siege pikes," thicker and longer than the ordinary *pilum*, so that they could be used with deadly effect.

§ 2. **ab latere aperto**: "on their exposed flank. **ex superioribus**

**castris**: "from the camp on higher ground," probably one of those on the heights of Flavigny. See plan.

§ 4. **priores fossas**: both the twenty-foot trench and the first of the two trenches which Caesar had dug just in front of his line of contravallation (see ch. 72). **diutius**: absolute, "somewhat long" or "too long."

**83.** § 1. **locorum**: the usual case (objective genitive) with *peritus*.

§ 2. **a septentrionibus**: "on the north." *Septentrio* or *Septentriones* was a name for the Great Bear ("the seven stars"), which is the great Northern constellation. For the force of *a*, see on **34**, § 3. The hill was probably the modern Mont Réa. **opere**: the wall of circumvallation. **declivi**: the Roman lines here ran along the slope of the hill where it faced Alesia, so that a Gallic force which climbed the crest of the hill would charge *down* upon the Romans.

§ 5. **quoque pacto**: i.e. *et quo pacto*. *Quo pacto*, as usual, means merely "in what way." **adeundi tempus**: "the time (at which they were) to advance." **videatur**: subjunctive of virtual oblique oration, it being part of the orders given to the surprise-party.

§ 7. **sub lucem**: "just before dawn."

§ 8. **campestres**: see on **81**, § 1, note.

**84.** § 1. **longurios**: long poles, to the end of which the *falces*, or siege-hooks, were attached. **musculos**: "mantlets," or sheds, under cover of which an attacking party might pull down the enemy's wall.

§ 2. **pars**: sc. *operis* or *munitionis*.

§ 4. **pugnantibus**: possessive dative, "behind their backs as they fought." The *clamor* came from both parties of Gauls, those of the relief army and those of Vercingetorix. As the Roman troops had to fight against both at once, each soldier could not avoid feeling apprehensive of what was going on behind his back. **vident**: sc. *nostri*. A soldier who was engaged in frustrating the attack on the *inner* wall, felt that his safety depended on the valour of those who were defending the *outer* wall, and *vice versa*. *Alienus* means "of another" or "of others."

**85.** § 1. **quaque**: from *quisque*. *Geratur* is subjunctive of indirect question.

§ 2. **utrisque**: *i.e.* both to the Romans and to the Gauls—"it occurred to the thoughts of each party." **conveniat**: subjunctive, as being part of the thought.

§ 3. **perfregerint**: perfect subjunctive, the clause being in virtual oratio obliqua. The Gauls said *Nisi perfregerimus* . . . , future perfect. In as much "I despair of safety" is the same thing as "I feel I *shall* not *be* safe," the use of the present in the *result*-clause, future perfect in the *if*-clause, is quite natural. So with *obtinuerint*, because *exspectant*—"look *forward* to"—has a quasi-future force.

§ 4. **superiores**: on the hill of Mont Réa. **iniquum**: "the unfavourable slope of the position in a downward direction." See the note on 83, § 2, *declivi*. **momentum**: "impetus." The Gauls' attack would gather impetus as they charged down the slope.

§ 5. **testudine**: "a tortoise," a special military formation in which a storming-party essayed to reach the enemy's wall by raising their shields above their heads, and so joining them that the enemy's missiles could not take effect.

§ 6. **agger**: "soil," which was used in making an *agger* or mound. **ea, quae occultaverant**: the *lilia*, *stimuli*, and *cippi* (ch. 73) by which the approach to the wall of circumvallation was covered.

86. § 2. **eruptione**: instrumental ablative, "by making a sortie."

§ 3. **omnium . . . consistere**: sc. *dicit* or *ostendit*, from *cohortatur*.

§ 4. **interiores**: *i.e.* the Gauls with Vercingetorix. **desperatis**: "despaired of (by the Gauls)," *i.e.* they gave up hope of cutting their way through there, for it was in the plain that the lines of the Romans were strongest. **praerupta exscensu**: "where the ascent was steep," *lit.* "steep in point of ascent."

§ 5. **propugnantes**: accusative, "those defending the wall."

87. § 2. **ab tergo**: "from the rear." They were to make a detour and attack the Gauls of the relief army from behind.

§ 3. **quas . . . deductas fors obtulit**: "which had been drawn off . . . and were now by chance put in his way," *i.e.* they happened to come up just as he needed them.

88. § 1. **colore**: he wore the *paludamentum*, the scarlet cloak of an *imperator*. *Cognito* belongs to *adventu* (ablative absolute). **insigni**: here a noun (ablative). **haec declivia et devexa**: Caesar, coming up to Labienus' position along the "bottom" between Alesia and Mont Réa, and up the slope towards the wall of circumvallation, was in full view of the Gauls under Vercassivellaunus on the heights of Mont Réa.

§ 3. **pilis**: the short pike of the Roman legionary. Each soldier carried two, using them as javelins, and after having discharged them he used his short sword. *Omissis* may mean either "discharged" or "thrown aside," because there was no opportunity for using them. **rem gerunt**: "got to work," "fought." **post tergum**: sc. *Gallorum*. The cavalry was that of Caesar, which had been sent to take the Gauls in the rear.

§ 6. **ex castris**: the camp of the Gallic army of relief.

§ 7. **novissimum agmen**: "their rear."

89. § 1. **necessitatum**: to be taken as depending on *causa*.

§ 2. **sit**: subjunctive, as being part of what Vercingetorix said. **utramque rem**: explained by the following alternatives, *seu . . . pelint*.

§ 5. **si . . . posset**: "to see if he could." **toto**: an unusual form of the dative of *totus*, instead of the normal *toti*. **praedae nomine**: "on the score of booty." *Nomen* is the "heading" under which items were entered in an account-book.

90. § 1. **recipit**: sc. *in fidem*—"received back to their allegiance."
§ 5. **ne . . . accipiant**: the Remi had sided with Caesar, and it was to be expected that the Bellovaci would seek to punish them for so doing.
§ 7. **Cabilloni et Matiscone**: the first is a locative, the second an ablative of place.
§ 8. **supplicatio**: a public thanksgiving to the gods in honour of Caesar's success in crushing the rebellion. Usually such festivals were of much shorter length; even a *supplicatio* of fifteen days was unheard of until Caesar earned it in his first Gallic campaign, 58 B.C. *Romae* is to be joined with *cognitis*, not with *redditur*.

# HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

## A.

**Aedui, -orum,** m. (or Haedui): one of the leading tribes of Gallia Celtica, dwelling along the right (eastern) bank of the Liger (*Loire*), south of the Senones and Mandubii, and west of the Sequani, in the modern department of *Saône et Loire*. Their neighbours beyond the Loire were the Arverni and Bituriges. They were rivals of the Arverni for the headship of Gaul, and for a long time endeavoured to obtain this by subserving the interests of Rome. They were persuaded however, by Litaviccus and Convictolitavis, to join Vercingetorix after the failure of Caesar to take Gergovia. After the suppression of the revolt they were well treated by Caesar (5, § 2; 89, § 5).

**Agedincum, -i,** n.: *Sens*, the capital of the Senones in the modern *Champagne*. It lies on the Icauna (*Yonne*), a tributary of the Sequana (*Seine*), and was the headquarters of Caesar and Labienus in 52 B.C. (10, § 4).

**Alĕsia, -ae,** f.: *Alise Ste. Reine*, near Dijon, in the department of Côte d'Or. It was the capital of the Mandubii immediately to the north of the Aedui, of whom they were clients. Here Vercingetorix was blockaded by the Romans towards the autumn of 52 B.C. and ultimately forced to surrender. See the plan on p. 95 (68, *foll.*).

**Allobrŏges, -um,** m.: a powerful tribe of Narbonese Gaul, occupying the plain between the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Isara (*Isère*). They had revolted from Rome in 61 B.C., under pressure of overtaxation, and the discontent which followed upon their reduction led Vercingetorix to look for their rising anew. He was disappointed, the Allobroges remaining loyal to Caesar. Their chief town was Vienna (*Vienne*). They are specially famous as having been tampered with by Catilina and having been the instruments of his overthrow, 63 B.C. (64, § 5; 75, § 3).

**Ambiani, -orum,** m.: a tribe of the coast of Normandy, north of the Bellovaci, department of *Somme*. Their name remains in that of *Amiens*, anciently Samarobriva, their capital (75, § 3).

**Ambibarii**: a petty tribe of Aremorica. Their capital was perhaps on the site of *Ambières* (75, § 4).

**Ambivarĕti, -orum,** m.: a petty tribe, clients of the Aedui, lying about the upper waters of the Icauna (*Yonne*) to the west of the Mandubii and south of the Senones (75, § 2; 90, § 6).

**Andi, -orum,** m.: on the lower Liger (*Loire*), west of the Turoni, where was afterwards *Anjou*. Their capital is now *Angers-sur-Mayenne* (4, § 6; 75, § 3). The name is also written **Andes, -ium.**

**Antonius, -i,** m.: Marcus Antonius was one of Caesar's *legati*, and did good service at Alesia (81, § 6). He followed Caesar through the Civil War, and proved himself a brilliant officer. After Caesar's murder (44 B.C.) he aroused the populace against the assassins, and contrived to get into his own hands most of the power that had been Caesar's; but quarrelling with senate, and with Caesar's heir Octavianus (Augustus), he was driven out of Rome for a time. He then made a coalition—the Second Triumvirate—with Octavianus and Lepidus (43 B.C.): the three divided the Roman world between them and overthrew all opposition at the great battle of Philippi, 42 B.C.; but they speedily fell out, and after eleven years of intrigues and bickerings, Octavianus crushed Antonius at the battle of Actium, 31 B.C. Antonius fled with his paramour Cleopatra to Egypt, where he committed suicide.

**Aquitania, -ae,** f.: one of the three divisions of Gallia Comata, including most of the south-west of France. The name survives in *Aquitaine*. See Introd. § 1.

**Arar, -is,** m.: the *Saône*, rising in the Vosges and flowing south between the Lingones and Sequani, across the lands of the Aedui, past Cabillonum and Matisco, to join the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) at Lyons (90, § 7).

**Arēmoricus, -a, -um**: adjective of **Aremorica** (-ae), the ancient name of Brittany. It means "the land by the sea," and includes the entire sea-board of France from the mouth of the Seine to that of the Loire (75, § 4).

**Arverni, -orum,** m.: the most powerful tribe of Gaul in Caesar's day. They were rivals of the Aedui, and to crush the latter they invited Ariovistus into Gaul (Introd. § 2). They inhabited parts of what was afterwards known as *Auvergne*, departments of *Allier* and *Puy de Dôme*, the country west of the upper course of the Liger (*Loire*), and south of the Bituriges. Their capital was Gergovia, which was in vain besieged by Caesar. Vercingetorix, leader of the revolt of 52 B.C., was an Arvernian of the royal blood. After the suppression of the revolt they were well treated by Caesar (4, § 1; 89, § 5). They claimed overlordship over a number of smaller tribes (75, § 2).

**Atrebătes, -um,** m.: a Belgic tribe between the Morini (N.) Nervii (E.), Bellovaci (S.), and Ambiani (W.). Their name perhaps survives in *Artois* and *Arras* (75, § 3).

**Aulerci, -orum,** m.: there were several branches of this tribe. (i) **Aulerci Eburovices** (75, § 3), whose name remains in *Evreux*,

their capital, in Normandy. They lay north of the Carnutes, along the left bank of the Sequăna (*Seine*). (ii) **Aulerci Brannovices**, about *Briennois* on the middle Liger (*Loire*), west of the Aedui (75, § 3). (iii) **Aulerci Cenomāni**, in Normandy, between the two preceding divisions of the tribe. The Brannovices were clients of the Aedui (75, § 3).

**Avarĭcum, -i, n.**: the capital town of the Biturīges, now *Bourges* on the Eure. It was the one town which the Bituriges declined to burn, and here they were besieged by Caesar, who took the place. It is described as "wellnigh the most beautiful town of Gaul" (13, § 3).

## B.

**Bellovăci, -orum, m.**: the bravest of the tribes of Belgic Gaul. They dwelt north of Paris, about the modern *Beauvais*, department of *Oise*, as far as the rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Samara (*Somme*). They declined at first to send a contingent to the army intended to relieve Alesia, but were amongst the most stubborn and dangerous of the opponents of Caesar (59, § 2; 75, § 3; 90, § 5).

**Bibracte, -is, n.**: the ancient capital of the Aedui, halfway between the Arar (*Saône*) and Liger (*Loire*), and not far east of Autun. The name survives in the hill of *Beauvray* (55, § 4; 63, § 5; 90, § 7).

**Biturīges, -um, m.**: a tribe on the left (southern) bank of the Liger (*Loire*) in modern *Berry* and *Touraine*. Their chief towns were Noviodunum (12, § 2), and Avaricum (which preserves their name now as *Bourges*). They voluntarily burnt all of their towns but Avaricum, by the advice of Vercingetorix on joining the revolt of 52 B.C. (5, § 1; 25, § 3).

**Boii, -orum, m.**: a Gallic tribe who joined the Helvetii in the attempted migration in 58 B.C. (Introd., p. xiii.). After their defeat at the battle of Bibracte they were settled in Gorgobina near the Liger (*Loire*), and made dependent upon the Aedui. They joined the revolt of Gaul under compulsion (9, § 6; 75, § 3).

**Brannovices, -um, m.**: see *s.v.* AULERCI.

## C.

**Cabillōnum, -i, n.**: a town of the Aedui, situated on the Arar (*Saône*), and now known as *Chalons-sur-Saône*. It was the residence of a number of Roman traders, who were massacred and plundered in the revolt of 52 B.C. (32, § 5), and was one of the emporiums of Caesar's supplies (90, § 7).

**Cadurci, -orum, m.**: a tribe of Aquitania, lying south-west of the Arverni, about the river Ottis (*Lot*), a tributary of the Garumna (*Garonne*). The name survives in those of the modern *Quercy* and *Cahors*, department of *Lot* (4, § 6; 75, § 2).

**Catetes, -um, m.**: a small tribe living north of the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*). Their capital was the site of the modern *Caux* (75).

**Carnūtes, -um,** m.: a tribe of Celtic Gaul lying west of the Senones. Their capital was Cenabum (*Orleans*). They were the first to raise the standard of revolt in 52 B.C., by murdering the Roman residents in Cenabum (3, § 1; 75, § 3).

**Cenăbum, -i,** n.: the capital of the Carnutes, now *Orleans*, on the Liger (*Loire*). It was the scene of the first rising of the Gauls in 52 B.C., and was taken and burnt by Caesar a few weeks later (3, § 1; 11). Hence **Cenabensis, -e,** native of Cenabum (11, § 7).

**Cenomāni, -orum,** m.: see *s.v.* AULERCI.

**Cevenna, -ae,** m.: the *Cevennes* Mountains in Southern France. They formed part of the frontier of the province of Narbonensis, and were difficult to pass in winter owing to the depth of snow upon them (8, § 2).

**Cicĕro, -ōnis,** m.: Q. Tullius Cicero, brother of Marcus the famous orator, acted as a *legatus* to Caesar during most of the Gallic War. In 54 B.C. he distinguished himself by the courage with which he repulsed a formidable attack upon his winter camp, and in the winter of 52 B.C., he was charged with the superintendence of supplies at Cabillonum (90, § 7).

**Clodius, -i,** m.: Publius Clodius Pulcher, a dissolute young noble who made himself a favourite with the mob of Rome and abused his power so as to obstruct the government and encourage all kinds of lawlessness and riot. He drove Cicero into exile 58 B.C., but in the next year Pompeius, who had quarrelled with Clodius, allowed Cicero to be recalled. The two were constant enemies from that date. Clodius still continued his violent behaviour, and was opposed by T. Annius Milo, who collected bands of armed ruffians to defend the cause of the government and senate. On January 20, 52 B.C., Clodius and Milo met in a brawl on the Appian Way at Bovillae, and Clodius was murdered (1, § 1). Milo was tried for the murder and condemned. The mob was so much excited by the affair, that Pompeius (*q.v.*) was appointed sole consul and proceeded to call out the levies.

**Curiosolĭtes, -um,** m.: a tribe of Aremorica. The name survives in *Corseult*.

## D.

**Decetia, -ae,** f.: a town of the Aedui, situated on the right (eastern) bank of the Liger (*Loire*). Now *Decize* (33, § 2).

## E.

**Eburovices, -um,** m.: see *s.v.* AULERCI.

**Elăver, -eris,** m.: the *Allier*, a tributary of the Liger (*Loire*), which it joins at Noviodunum Aeduorum. It rises in the Cevennes and flows north across the lands of the Arverni (Auvergne) past Gorgobina (34, § 2).

**Eleuteti, -orum,** m.: a petty tribe in dependence upon the Arverni. They lay in Aquitania, near the Nitiobriges and Cadurci about the river **Duranius** (*Dordogne*), a tributary of the Garonne (75, § 2).

## G.

**Gabăli, -orum,** m. : a minor tribe dwelling amongst the uplands of Mons Cevenna (*Cevennes*), south-east of the Arverni, along the frontiers of Narbonensis. They were dependents and clients of the Arverni (7, § 2; 64, § 6; 75, § 2).

**Gergovia, -ae,** f. : the capital of the Arverni (4, § 2). After the sack of Cenabum and Avaricum, it was besieged by Caesar without success (36-52). It lay on the river Auzon, a tributary of the Elaver (*Allier*), some four miles south of Clermont, amongst the mountains of Auvergne. See the plan on p. 80.

**Gorgobĭna, -ae,** f. : a town in which Caesar settled such of the Boii as survived the rout of the Helvetii at Bibracte (Introd., p. xiii.). Its site is much disputed (9, § 6).

## H.

**Helvii, -orum,** m. : a tribe of the Narbonensis, between the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Elaver (*Allier*), (7, § 5; 64, § 6).

## L.

**Labiēnus, -i,** m. : Titus Atius Labienus, tribune of the plebs, 63 B.C., supported the interests of Caesar so well that he was taken into Gaul as a *legatus*, and served there during the whole of Caesar's campaigns. He proved himself the most able of all the *legati*, and was entrusted with the command of four legions in the campaign of 52 B.C., with a commission to subdue the revolted Gauls on the Sequana (*Seine*), which however he failed to do. On the outbreak of the Civil War (Introd. § 3), he joined Pompeius. He fought at Pharsalia, Thapsus, and Munda, dying in the last named battle, 45 B.C.

**Lemovices, -um,** m.: a tribe west of the Arverni, in the modern *Limousin* about *Limoges*, which names preserve that of the tribe (4, § 6 : 75, § 3).

**Lexobii:** a tribe dwelling south of the Seine, about its mouth. The name survives in *Lisieux*.

**Liger, -is,** m.: the *Loire*, which rises in Auvergne and flows north by the Aedui to Cenabum (*Orleans*), and thence to the Atlantic (5, § 9).

**Lingŏnes, -um,** m.: a tribe dwelling north of the Aedui and east of the Sequani, about the upper waters of the Seine. Their name survives in *Langres*.

**Litaviccus, -i,** m.: an Aeduan noble who conspired to bring the Aedui over to the side of Vercingetorix. Being entrusted with the command of 10,000 Aeduans, who were intended to aid Caesar at Gergovia, he persuaded them to revolt. Caesar suppressed the revolt and recaptured the men, while Litaviccus fled to Gergovia. Subsequently he seized Bibracte and induced the whole of the Aedui to go over to Vercingetorix (34, § 2; 55, § 2). He was assisted by two other Aeduan nobles, Eporedorix and Viridomarus.

**Lutetia, -ae, f.**: commonly called *Lutetia Parisiorum*, the modern *Paris*. The Gallic town was confined to the Island in the Sequana (*Seine*), now known as *Ile de la Cité*. It was the object of the fruitless campaign of Labienus in 52 B.C. (57, § 4; 58, § 6).

## M.

**Mandubii, -orum, m.**: a minor tribe of Celtic Gaul, lying north of the Aedui. Their capital was Alesia (68, § 1).

**Matisco, -onis, m.**: *Maçon*, a town of the Aedui on the Arar (*Saône*), some 50 miles north of Lyons. It was one of the Roman depôts for supplies, and was the headquarters of a legion in the winter of 52 B.C. (90, § 7).

**Mediomatrĭci, -orum, m.**: a tribe of Eastern Gaul (*Lorraine*), lying between the Mosella (*Moselle*) and the Rhine. Their capital was the modern *Metz* (75, § 3).

**Metiosēdum, -i, n.**: a town of the Senones, built on an island in the Seine, 30 miles above Lutetia (*Paris*). Now *Melun* (58, § 2).

**Morĭni, -orum, m.**: one of the wildest and least accessible of the Belgic tribes, occupying the swamps and morasses of the coast between the mouths of the Samara (*Somme*) and the Scaldis (*Scheldt*), in the modern *Picardy* (75, § 3).

## N.

**Narbo, -ōnis, m.**: now *Narbonne*, on the north-west shore of the Gulf of Lyons. It was colonised by the Romans in 118 B.C. (Introd. p. ix), and thence the province took its name of Narbonensis (7, § 2).

**Nervii, -orum, m.**: a Belgic tribe occupying the region about the sources of the Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and Sabis (*Sambre*). Their frontier to the south was the Silva Arduenna or *Ardennes* (75, § 3).

**Nitiobrōges, -um, m.**: a minor tribe, dwelling on the Garumna (*Garonne*), along the frontiers of the province of Narbonensis (46, § 5).

**Noviodūnum, -i, n.**: there were several towns of this name. (i) A town of the Biturīges (12, § 2), supposed to be either *Sancerre* or *Nouan le Fuzélier*; it was near Orleans. (ii) A town of the Aedui (55, § 1), now *Nevers*.

## O.

**Osismi**: a petty tribe in Brittany, situated to the north of the Veneti (75, § 4).

## P.

**Parisii, -orum, m.**: the tribe which has left its name to *Paris*, anciently Lutetia (57, § 1), on the Sequăna (*Seine*).

**Petrocorii, -orum, m.**: an Aquitanian tribe lying north of the Duranius (*Dordogne*) in the modern department of *Dordogne* (75, § 3).

**Pictŏnes, -um, m.**: a tribe occupying a large tract of land on the

left (southern) bank of the lower Liger (*Loire*). They sent contingents to the great army of relief at Alesia (*75*, § 3). Their name survives in the modern *Poictiers*.

**Pompeius, -i**, m.: Gnaeus Pompeius, surnamed Magnus, distinguished himself in the wars of Sulla, and subsequently in Spain, (where he conquered Sertorius), and Asia (where he conquered Mithradates). In 60 B.C. he formed the famous coalition with Caesar and Crassus known as the First Triumvirate. In 58 B.C. he allowed Clodius (*q.v.*) to send Cicero into exile, but soon quarrelled with Clodius; whereupon he procured Cicero's recall. In 52 B.C. he was made sole consul, after the death of Clodius, to restore order in Rome. In 49 B.C. he quarrelled with Caesar, who marched on Rome, drove Pompeius from Italy, and defeated him at Pharsalus (48 B.C.). A few days later Pompeius was murdered at Alexandria. See also Introd., § 3.

## R.

**Raurĭci, -orum**, m.: a petty tribe west of the Rhine, in the neighbourhood of the modern Basel (*75*, § 3).

**Redŏnes, -um**, m.: a people living in Brittany about the modern *Rennes*.

**Rēmi, -orum**, m.: a powerful Belgic tribe between the Treveri (E.), and Bellovaci (W.). They remained loyal to Caesar during 52 B.C. (*63*, § 7), and were consequently threatened with attacks from the Bellovaci (*90*, § 5). Their name survives in the modern *Rheims*, their capital.

**Rutēni, -orum**, m.: a tribe dwelling to the south of the Arverni, along the frontiers of the Roman province of Gallia Narbonensis. A portion of them were included in the province, and were thence known as **Ruteni Provinciales** (*4*, § 6).

## S.

**Santŏni, -orum**, m.: a tribe of the western coast of Gallia Celtica, north of the estuary of the Garumna (*Garonne*). Their name remains in the modern department of *Saintonges* with its capital *Saintes* (*75*, § 3).

**Segusiavi, -orum**, m.: a tribe occupying the lands about the sources of the Liger (*Loire*).

**Sĕnŏnes, -um**, m.: a powerful tribe lying between the upper Sequana (*Seine*) and the Liger (*Loire*). They have left their name to their capital town *Sens*, ancient Agedincum (*4*, § 6).

**Sēquăna, -ae**, f.: the *Seine*, rising in the highlands near Alesia, and flowing W.N.W. past the Senones and across the lands of the Parisii to Lutetia (*Paris*) and so to the Atlantic (*57*, § 1).

**Sēquăni, -orum**, m.: a powerful tribe of the eastern part of central Gaul, about the upper course of the Arar (*Saône*).

## T.

**Tolōsātes, -ium**, m.: natives of Tolōsa (*Toulouse*) on the Garumna (*Garonne*), one of the chief towns of Gallia Narbonensis, and the ancient capital of a division of the Volcae (*q.v.*), surnamed Tectosāges (7, § 4).

**Trevĕri, -orum**, m.: a people dwelling on either side of the Mosella (*Moselle*), immediately above its confluence with the Rhenus (*Rhine*), and bordering upon the Remi to the west. They were partly German in blood. The name survives in the modern *Trèves* or *Trière*. They were harassed by the attacks of Germans from beyond the Rhine, and thereby prevented from taking any part in the revolt of 52 B.C. (63, § 7).

**Tŭrŏni, -orum**, m.: a tribe dwelling about the middle course of the Liger (*Loire*). The name survives in *Tours*, their capital, and *Touraine*, the province (4, § 6).

## V.

**Veliocassi, -orum**, m.: a Celtic tribe of the modern *Normandy*, lying on either bank of the lower Seine in the modern *Vexin*. Their capital was *Rouen* (75, § 3).

**Vellavii, -orum**, m.: a client tribe of the Arverni, lying amongst the Cevennes mountains between the Elaver (*Allier*) and Rhodanus (*Rhone*), about the modern *Velay* (75, § 2).

**Vercingetŏrix, -ĭgis**, m.: an Arvernian prince who had been kept out of the sovereignty of his tribe by the growing power of the nobles. The latter cultivated friendly relations with Caesar and Rome, and Vercingetorix made this the excuse for a *coup d'état*. Having recovered his power, he roused the Gauls to join in the revolt already commenced by the Carnutes, got himself elected commander-in-chief, and retained this position until the capitulation of Alesia, when he surrendered to Caesar and was subsequently executed. For further particulars, see the Argument, Introd. § 7.

**Vienna, -ae**, f.: the capital of the Allobroges, situated on the Rhone. It is the modern *Vienne*.

**Volcae, -arum**, m.: (surnamed **Arecomici**), a tribe of the southern slope of the Mons Cebenna (*Cevennes*), reaching along great part of the frontier of the province of Narbonensis (7, § 4). Their capital was Nemausus (*Nîmes*).

TEST PAPERS

ON

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, BOOK VII.

## FIRST SERIES.

### TEST PAPER 1. (Ch. i.—xi.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. ii., §§ 1, 2, His rebus ... deserantur.
(*b*) Ch. iv., §§ 7—10, Qua oblata ... alios.

2. Give the gender and all genitives of *iure iurando, obsides, auribus, dies, nive,* and *fines.*

3. Write out the principal parts of *cognoscit, impulsi, efferantur, cavere, proficiscitur, arcesseret, represso,* and *iniretur.*

4. Write a brief note to explain the following:—(*a*) conventus agere; (*b*) iuniores Italiae; (*c*) rationem habere; (*d*) eques Romanus; (*e*) obsidibus cavere; (*f*) usu venire; (*g*) operam dare; (*h*) vindicare in libertatem.

### TEST PAPER 2. (Ch. xii.—xxii.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. xiv., §§ 3—5, Id esse ... videantur.
(*b*) Ch. xxii., §§ 1, 2, Singulari ... usitatum est.

2. Give the gender and genitive plural of *palude, aggerem, falces*; the other degrees of comparison of *plures, diu, liberius.*

3. Write down the third singular perfect subjunctive (both voices) of *conquirerent, conicere, redigere, abstrahi, laturos esse.*

4. Give the meaning of the following :—(*a*) cotidianus agger ; (*b*) res familiaris ; (*c*) frumentationes ; (*d*) vineas agere ; (*e*) merere ; (*f*) sarcina ; (*g*) aggerem apparare ; (*h*) parentare.

## TEST PAPER 3. (Ch. xxiii.—xxxv.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xxiii., §§ 1—3, Muri ... contineantur.
(*b*) Ch. xxxiii., § 3, Cum prope ... iussit.

2. Parse in full *ariete, ferretur, sebi, oreretur, vellet, alatur, nanctus.*

3. Give the meaning of :—(*a*) e regione pontis; (*b*) secundum flumen ; (*c*) ante tertiam vigiliam ; (*d*) cuneatim ; (*e*) ab altera parte fluminis iter facere.

4. Translate and explain the following :—

(*a*) Reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, distractis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur.

(*b*) Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes in solo collocantur.

(*c*) Dixit civitatem esse omnem in armis ; divisum senatum, divisum populum, suas cuiusque eorum clientelas.

(*d*) His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit.

## TEST PAPER 4. (Ch. xxxvi.—xlvii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. xxxvi., §§ 2—4, At Vercingetorix ... perspiceret.
(*b*) Ch. xlv., §§ 7—9, Vacua castra ... proponit.

2. Give the meaning of the expressions :—(*a*) quintis castris venit ; (*b*) indicta causa interfecti sunt ; (*c*) manus tendere ; (*d*) pluteus ; (*e*) fidem dare ; (*f*) bona publicare ; (*g*) de media nocte ; (*h*) compendium.

3. Parse *passis, innata, itineris.* What have you to say about the form *civitatium*?

4. Distinguish between:—(i) *Ad Gergoviam venit*, and *Gergoviam venit*; (ii) *Ad Gergoviam fuit*, and *Gergoviae fuit.* How do you express in Latin "three camps"?

## TEST PAPER 5. (Ch. xlviii.—lxii.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. l., §§ 1, 2, Cum acerrime ... existimabant.
(*b*) Ch. liv., §§ 3, 4, Discedentibus ... viderentur.

2. Give the meaning of:—(*a*) manipulares; (*b*) contio; (*c*) multatus; (*d*) stipendium; (*e*) Liger ex nivibus creverat; (*f*) palus perpetua.

3. What is the exact meaning of the prepositions in the expressions:—(*a*) sub lucem; (*b*) ab dextro latere; (*c*) in Arvernos versus movet; (*d*) ab civitate interfectus; (*e*) per exploratores cognoscit.

4. Translate with brief explanations:—
(*a*) Exposuit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum sine ducibus et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset.
(*b*) Abiuncto Labieno atque iis legionibus, quos una miserat, vehementer timebat.

## TEST PAPER 6. (Ch. lxiii.—lxxiii.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. lxxii., §§ 3, 4, Hoc intermisso ... distarent.
(*b*) Ch. lxxiii., §§ 2—4, Itaque ... appellabant.

2. Distinguish *nullus non* and *non nullus*, *agmen* and *acies*, *Castrum* and *castra*, *paulum* and *paulo*.

3. Parse in full *coactis, pulsi, ferri, coepit, feminis, scrobis, hamis.*

4. What is the meaning of:—(*a*) frequens, (*b*) levis armaturae pedites; (*c*) evocati; (*d*) comitia; (*e*) fastigium; (*f*) maceria; (*g*) angustioribus portis relictis coacervantur; (*h*) capitis poena.

## TEST PAPER 7. (Ch. lxxiv.—lxxx.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. lxxvii., §§ 9—11, Nolite ... versantur.
(*b*) Ch. lxxx., §§ 4, 5, Cum suos ... excitabat.

2. Parse in full *cadaveribus, praetereunda, oratibus, iacturam, experiantur, confertis, noverit.*

3. What is the meaning of:—(*a*) Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt; (*b*) immunis; (*c*) numerus inibatur; (*d*) foris; (*e*) secures; (*f*) in provinciam redigere; (*g*) anceps proelium.

4. Translate and explain:—
(*a*) XIIII milia passuum complexus, paris eiusdem generis munitiones, diversos ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit.
(*b*) Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt.

## TEST PAPER 8. (Ch. lxxxi.—xc.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. lxxxi., §§ 1, 2, Uno die ... administrare.
(*b*) Ch. lxxxvi., §§ 1—4, His rebus ... conferunt.

2. Explain (with translation) the following:—
(*a*) Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, quod suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare.
(*b*) His rebus ex litteris Caesaris cognitis, Romae dierum xx supplicatio redditur.
(*c*) Iniquum loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momentum.

3. Write a note to explain the meaning of:—(*a*) fundis librilibus sudibus . . . glandibus; (*b*) stimuli; (*c*) septentriones; (*d*) musculi; (*e*) testudinem facere.

## SECOND SERIES.

### TEST PAPER 9. (Ch. i.—xi.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. v., §§ 4, 5, Qui cum ... circumsisterent.
(*b*) Ch. x., § 1, Magnam ... laboraret.

2. Translate *three* of the following and explain the syntax of the words in italics:—

(*a*) Qui iam ante se populi Romani imperio subiectos *dolerent*, de bello consilia inire incipiunt.

(*b*) Quae *Cenabi* oriente *sole* gesta *essent*, ante primam *confectam vigiliam* in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt.

(*c*) Legatos mittunt *subsidium rogatum*.

(*d*) Discussa *nive* sex in altitudinem *pedum* summo militum *sudore* ad fines Arvernorum pervenit.

(*e*) Ea qui *conficeret*, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit.

3. State to what events the following passages allude:—

(*a*) Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede, de senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes iuniores Italiae coniurarent, dilectum tota provincia habere instituit.

(*b*) Boiorum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat.

4. Define geographically Agedincum, Cenabum, Narbo, Liger, Cevenna, and give their modern names.

### TEST PAPER 10. (Ch. xii.—xxii.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. xix., §§ 2, 3, Hoc se colle ... cognosceret.
(*b*) Ch. xxii., §§ 3—5, Totum ... prohibebant.

2. Turn into the direct speech the reported speech in Ch. xvii., §§ 4—7, *ne id faceret . . . parentarent*.

3. Explain the syntax of the italicised words in *three* of the following:—

(*a*) Cum . . . novi aliquid ab iis iniri *consilii intellexisset*.

(*b*) Locum dèligit . . . *ab Avarico* longe milia *passuum* XVI.

(*c*) Dispersos, cum longius *necessario procederent*, adoriebatur.

(*d*) Cognovit Vercingetorigem castra movisse propius *Avaricum*.

(*e*) *Proditionis* insimulatus.

4. Translate with brief explanations:—

(*a*) Paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimares.

(*b*) Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, quas, cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant.

(*c*) Quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

## TEST PAPER 11. (Ch. xxiii.—xxxv.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. xxiii., §§ 4, 5, Sic deinceps ... potest.

(*b*) Ch. xxviii., § 6, Quos ille ... obvenerat.

2. Account for the use of the cases in the following excerpts:—

(*a*) *Diebus* XXV aggerem latum *pedes* CCCXXX exstruxerunt.

(*b*) Eodem illo *munere* fungebatur.

(*c*) *Alteri* successit tertius.

(*d*) Quos ille multa iam *nocte silentio* excepit.

(*e*) Cuius *rei* fuerunt imperiti.

3. How was a Roman legion armed, paid, divided, and commanded in the time of Caesar? (*Answer briefly.*)

4. Show briefly what had been effected by Caesar in Gaul up to the seventh campaign.

## TEST PAPER 12. (Ch. xxxvi.—xlvii.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. xliii., §§ 1—2, Interim ... mittunt.

(*b*) Ch. xlvi., §§ 1—3, Oppidi ... compleverant.

2. Explain the syntax of the italicised words in any *three* of the following:—

(*a*) De obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam *expedisset.*

(*b*) Prius quam *subsidio* ex oppido *veniri posset*, *loco* potitus.

(*c*) Hortatur, ut simili ratione, atque ipse *fecerit*, *suas* iniurias *persequantur.*

(*d*) *Receptui* cani iussit.

(*e*) Nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute consequi *possent.*

3. Define the geographical position of Elaver, Arverni, Gergovia, Aquitania, Provincia, and give the modern name of each.

4. Briefly describe the methods employed by the Romans in a siege.

## TEST PAPER 13. (Ch. xlviii.—lxii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. lii., §§ 3, 4, Quanto opere ... desiderare.
(*b*) Ch. lvi., §§ 3—5, Itaque ... instituit.

2. Translate *three* of the following sentences and explain the syntax of the words italicised :—

(*a*) Visi sunt Aedui ab latere *nostris* aperto.
(*b*) Dextris *umeris exsertis* animadvertebantur.
(*c*) Oppidum, ne *cui* esset *usui Romanis*, incenderunt.
(*d*) Hos *adverso flumine* magno *tumultu proficisci* imperat.
(*e*) Parva manus *Metiosedum* versus missa, quae tantum *progrediatur*, quantum naves *processissent*.

3. Briefly explain the following terms :—(*a*) signa inferre; (*b*) centurio; (*c*) praefectus equitum; (*d*) turma; (*e*) cohors; (*f*) novissimum agmen.

4. (*a*) What were the functions of the *quaestor*, the *legatus*, and the *tribunus militum*? How were they appointed to their posts? Name some of Caesar's *legati* in this campaign.

**Or,**

(*b*) Describe briefly Caesar's operations before Gergovia, drawing a rough map of the place to illustrate your answer.

## TEST PAPER 14. (Ch. lxiii.—lxxiii.)

1. Translate :—(*a*) Ch. lxxii., §§ 1, 2, Fossam ... possent.
(*b*) Ch. lxxiii., §§ 6—8, Huc teretes ... appellabant.

2. Translate and explain *two* of the following passages :—

(*a*) Ante quos obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis scrobes tres in altitudinem pedes fodiebantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio.

(*b*) Ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis infixis totae in terram infodiebantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

(*c*) Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit Germanisque distribuit.

3. Explain the syntax of the following :—

(*a*) Quae fuit causa, quare toto *abessent* bello.
(*b*) Dixit perfacile esse *factu frumentationibus* Romanos prohibere.

(*c*) Circiter *milia* passuum x ab Romanis *trinis castris* consedit.

(*d*) Haec eadem noctu *excubitoribus* tenebantur.

4. Show what districts were occupied by the following tribes: Aedui, Allobroges, Senones, Remi, Lingones, Sequani, Carnutes, Bellovaci, Bituriges; and mention any modern geographical names connected with any of these.

## TEST PAPER 15. (Ch. lxxiv.—lxxx.)

1. Translate:—Ch. lxxvii., §§ 12—14, Quid ergo ... reliquerunt.

2. Turn into oblique oration, dependent upon a verb in historic time, the words *Quid ergo . . . iudicarem*, in the above extract.

3. To what war is allusion made in the words *Quod maiores nostri nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt?*

4. Account for the mood of the italicised words:—

(*a*) Pars eruptionem, dum vires *suppeterent*, censebat.

(*b*) Qui se ultro morti *offerant*, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter *ferant*.

(*c*) Inter equites sagittarios interiecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio *succurrerent*.

Or,

(*d*) Draw an outline map of Gaul, and insert therein the position of the more important of the tribes mentioned in Ch. lxxv. What modern French towns derive, or are said to derive, their names from the Lexobii, Cadurci, Ambibarii, Santoni, Turoni, Lemovices, Curiosolites, Caletes?

## TEST PAPER 16. (Ch. lxxxi.—xc.)

1. Translate:—(*a*) Ch. lxxxii., §§ 1, 2, Dum longius ... receperunt.

(*b*) Ch. lxxxiv., § 1, Vercingetorix ... profert.

2. What do you know of the position of Matisco, Bibracte, Sequana, Arar, Cabillonum, Rhodanus, Alesia? Add the modern name of each.

3. Write a short account of Vercingetorix. What was his end?

4. Describe briefly the siege of Alesia, and illustrate your answer by a rough plan of the town.

# VOCABULARY.

1, 1. conventus ..... conventus, -ūs, m., *assizes.*
agendos ..... ago, -ĕre, egi, actum, 3, *to conduct, preside over.*
caede ..... caedes, -is, f., *murder.*
consulto ..... consultum, -i, n., *a decree.*
dilectum..... dilectus, -ūs, m., *a levy.*
2. affingunt..... affingo, -ĕre, affinxi, affictum, 3, *to invent in addition.*
urbano ..... urbanus, -a, -um, *belonging to the city.*
3. impulsi ..... impello, -ĕre, impuli, impulsum, 3, *to prompt.*
occasione ..... occasio, -onis, f., *an opportunity.*
dolerent..... doleo, -ēre, 2, *to be annoyed.*
4. indictis ..... indico, -ĕre, indixi, indictum, 3, *to arrange, appoint.*
silvestribus ..... silvestris, -e, *in the woods.*
queruntur ..... queror, -i, questus sum, 3, *to complain.*
recidere ..... recĭdo, -ĕre, recĭdi, recasum, 3, *to fall*
5. miserantur..... miseror, -ari (*to commiserate*), *bewail.*
pollicitationibus ... pollicitatio, -onis, f., *a promise.*
vindicent ..... vindico, -are, 1, *to lay claim to.*
6. clandestina ..... clandestinus, -a, -um, *secret.*
efferantur ..... effero, efferre, extuli, elatum, *to make public.*
intercludatur..... intercludo, -ĕre, interclusi, interclusum, 3, *to cut off.*
7. audeant ..... audeo, -ēre, ausus sum, 2, *to dare.*
hibernis ..... hiberna, -orum, n. pl., *winter-quarters.*
praesidio ..... praesidium, -i, n., *a guard.*
8. praestare ..... praestat, -are, praestitit (impers.), 1, *to be better.*
veterem ..... vetus, -eris, *old-established.*
recuperare ..... recupero, -are, 1, *to win back.*
2, 1. profitentur..... profiteor, -eri, professus sum, 2, *to declare.*
salutis..... salus, -utis, f., *weal, safety.*
recusare ..... recuso, -are, 1, *to shrink from.*

2. obsidibus ..... obses, -idis, com., *a hostage.*
cavere ..... caveo, -ēre, cavi, cautum, 2, *to take precautions.*
iure iurando ..... ius iurandum, iuris iurandi, n., *an oath.*
fide ..... fides, -ei, f., *honour.*
sanciatur ..... sancio, -ire, sanxi, sanctum, 4, *to give security.*
collatis ..... confero, conferre, contuli, collatum, *to mass together.*
signis ..... signum, -i, n., *a standard.*
continetur ..... contineo, -ēre, continui, contentum, 2, *to embrace, include.*
3. collaudatis ..... collaudo, -are, 1, *to compliment warmly.*
3, 1. desperatis ..... desperatus, -a, -um, *wrought up to desperation.*
honestum ..... honestus, -a, -um, *worthy, estimable.*
equitem ..... eques, -itis, m., *a knight.*
rei frumentariae ... res frumentaria, rei frumentariae, f., *corn-supply.*
praeerat ..... praesum, praeesse, praefui, *to superintend.*
2. illustrior ..... illustrior, -ius (compar. of illustris, -e), *more noted.*
deinceps ..... adv., *next in order.*
3. confectam ..... conficio, -ĕre, confeci, confectum, 3, *to complete.*
vigiliam ..... vigilia, -ae, f., *a watch of the night.*
circiter ..... adv., *about.*
4, 1. ratione ..... ratio, -onis, f., *fashion, manner.*
clientibus ..... cliens, -entis, m., *a retainer.*
incendit ..... incendo, -ĕre, incendi, incensum, 3, *to arouse.*
2. prohibetur ..... prohibeo, -ēre, 2, *to prevent.*
patruo ..... patruus, -i, m., *an uncle on the father's side.*
temptandam ..... tempto, -are, 1, *to hazard.*
3. destitit ..... desisto, -ĕre, destiti, destitum, 3, *to desist.*
egentium ..... egeo, -ēre, 2, *to be needy.*
perditorum ..... perditus, -a, -um (perf. partic. pass. of perdo), *desperate, reckless.*
4. coacta ..... cogo, -ĕre, coëgi, coactum, 3, *to get together.*
manu ..... manus, -ūs, f. (*a hand*), *a force, company.*
paulo ..... adv., *little.*
5. quoque versus ..... adv., *in every direction.*
6. obtestatur ..... obtestor, -ari, 1, *to beg.*
7. oblata ..... offero, offerre, obtŭli, oblatum, *to confer on.*
8. equitatui ..... equitatus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
studet ..... studeo, -ēre, 2, *to give attention to.*
9. supplicii ..... supplicium, -i, n., *punishment.*

10. delicto ..... delictum, -i, n., *an offence.*
tormentis ..... tormentum, -i, n., *torture.*
necat ..... neco, -are, 1, *to put to death.*
desectis ..... deseco, -are, desecui, desectum, 1, *to cut off.*
singulis ..... singuli, -ae, -a, *one apiece.*
effossis ..... effodio, -ĕre, effodi, effossum, 3, *to dig out.*
documento..... documentum, -i, n., *an example.*
poenae ..... poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
5, 3. peditatus ..... peditatus, -ūs, m., *infantry.*
subsidio ..... subsidium, -i, n., *an auxiliary force.*
4. morati..... moror, -ari, 1, *to wait.*
5. veritos ..... vereor, -ēri, 2, *to fear.*
circumsisterent..... circumsisto, -ĕre, circumstiti, circumstitum, 3, *to surround.*
6. constat ..... constat, -are, constitit (impers:), 1, *to be evident.*
proponendum ..... propono, -ĕre, proposui, propositum, 3, *to lay down, assert.*
6, 1. commodiorem ..... commodior, -ius (compar. of commodus, -a, -um), *more satisfactory.*
2. afficiebatur ..... afficio, -ĕre, affeci, affectum, 3, *to affect.*
ratione ..... ratio, -onis, f., *means.*
3. arcesseret ..... arcesso, -ĕre, arcessivi, arcessitum, 3, *to send for.*
dimicaturas ..... dimico, -are, 1, *to give battle.*
contenderet ..... contendo, -ĕre, contendi, contentum, 3, *to make one's way.*
7, 2. utrisque ..... uterque, utraque, utrumque, *both*; plur. *both of two bodies of people.*
3. antevertendum ..... anteverto, -ĕre, anteverti, anteversum, 3 *to give preference to.*
4. confirmat ..... confirmo, -are, 1, *to reassure.*
provincialibus ..... provincialis, -e, *belonging to the Province.*
5. supplementum ..... supplementum, -i, n., *a reinforcement.*
contingunt..... contingo, -ĕre, contigi, contactum, 3, *to border upon.*
8, 1. represso ..... reprimo, -ĕre, repressi, repressum, 3, *to check.*
2. etsi ..... conj., *although.*
discludit..... discludo, -ĕre, disclusi, disclusum, 3, *to separate.*
durissimo ..... durissimus, -a, -um (superl. of durus, -a, -um), *severest.*
altissima..... altissimus, -a, -um (superl. of altus, -a, -um), *(very high), very deep.*
nive..... nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
discussa ..... discutio, -ĕre, discussi, discussum, 3 *(to shake apart), to clear away.*

patefactis ..... patefacio, -ĕre, patefeci, patefactum, 3, *to lay open.*
sudore..... sudor, -oris, m. (*sweat*), *effort.*
3. inopinantibus ..... inopinans, -antis, *not expecting.*
munitos ..... munio, -ire, 4, *to fortify.*
singulari..... singularis, -e, *single, one only.*
semitae ..... semita, -ae, f., *a road.*
patuerant ..... pateo, -ēre, 2, *to lie open.*
vagentur..... vagor, -ari, 1, *to roam.*
4. obsecrant ..... obsecro, -are, 1, *to entreat.*
translatum..... transfero, transferre, transtuli, translatum, *to hand over.*
5. precibus ..... preces, -um, f. (nom. sing. prex, gen. precis, obsolete), *entreaties.*

9, 1. biduum ..... biduum, -i, n., *a period of two days.*
usu ..... usus, -ūs, m., *use, practice.*
opinione ..... opinio, -onis, f., *opinion.*
2. operam ..... opera, -ae, f., *care, attention.*
triduo ..... triduum, -i, n., *a period of three days.*
4. nanctus ..... nanciscor, -i, nanctus and nactus sum, 3, *to obtain possession of.*
recentem ..... recens, -entis, *fresh, untired.*
eo..... adv., *thither.*
hiemabant..... hiemo, -are, 1, *to winter.*
etiam ..... adv., *even.*
iniretur ..... ineo, inire, inii, initum, *to engage in.*
6. rursus ..... adv., *back.*
collocaverat ..... colloco, -are, 1, *to settle in a place.*
attribuerat..... attribuo, -ĕre, attribui, attributum, 3 *to make tributary to.*

10, 1. stipendiariis ..... stipendiarius, -i, m., *a tributary, dependent.*
expugnatis..... expugno, -are, 1, *to reduce by warfare.*
deficeret..... deficio, -ĕre, defeci, defectum, 3, *to revolt.*
maturius..... adv., *too early.*
subvectionibus ..... subvectio, -onis, f., *conveyance.*
laboraret ..... laboro, -are, 1, *to be hampered.*
2. visum est ..... videt, -eri, visum est (impers.), 2, *to seem advisable.*
perpeti ..... perpetior, -i, perpessus sum, 3, *to put up with.*
alienare ..... alieno, -are, 1, *to estrange.*
3. cohortatus..... cohortor, -ari, 1, *to urge.*
supportando ..... supporto, -are, 1, *to bring up.*
4. impedimentis ..... impedimenta, -orum, n., *baggage.*

11, 1. expeditiore ..... expeditior, -ius, compar. of expeditus, -a, -um, *unencumbered.*
circumvallavit ..... circumvallo, -are, 1, *to surround with a wall.*

2. deditione ..... deditio, -onis, f., *surrender.*
iumenta ..... iumentum, -i, n., *a beast of burden.*
4. tuendi ..... tueor, -eri (no perf.), 2, *to protect.*
5. huc ..... adv., *hither.*
exclusus ..... excludo, -ĕre, exclusi, exclusum, 3 (*to shut off*), *to prevent.*
posterum ..... posterus, -i, m. (sc. dies), *the next day.*
6. excubare ..... excubo, -are, 1, *to be out on guard.*
8. potitur ..... potior, -iri, 4, *to get possession of.*
perpaucis ..... perpauci, -ae, -a, *very few.*
desideratis ..... desidero, -are, 1 (*to desire*), *to miss.*
angustiae ..... angustiae, -arum, f., *narrowness.*
12, 3. ignosceret ..... ignosco, -ĕre, ignovi, ignotum, 3, *to pardon.*
pleraque ..... plerique, -aeque, -aque, *very many.*
4. administrarentur ... administro, -are, 1, *to attend to.*
conquirerent ..... conquiro, -ĕre, conquisivi, conquisitum, 3, *to collect, search for.*
procul ..... adv., *in the distance.*
5. simul atque ..... conj., *as soon as.*
oppidani ..... oppidanus, -i, m., *an inhabitant of a town.*
6. significatione ..... significatio, -onis, f., *significant action.*
gladiis ..... gladius, -i, m., *a sword.*
destrictis ..... destringo, -ĕre, destrinxi, destrictum, 3, *to draw out.*
incolumes ..... incolumis, -e, *safe.*
13, 2. profligatis ..... profligo, -are, 1, *to put to flight.*
comprehensos ..... comprehendo, -ĕre, comprehendi, comprehensum, 3, *to seize.*
opera ..... opera, -ae, f. (*efforts*), *instrumentality.*
plebem ..... plebs, -is, f., *the populace.*
concitatam ..... concito, -are, 1, *to rouse.*
3. munitissimum ..... munitissimus, -a, -um (superl. of munitus, -a, -um), *best fortified.*
redacturum ..... redigo, -ĕre, redegi, redactum, 3, *to bring under one's power again.*
14, 2. pabulatione ..... pabulatio, -onis, f., *forage.*
commeatu ..... commeatus, -ūs, m., *supplies.*
3. subleventur ..... sublevo, -are, 1, *to aid.*
4. pabulum ..... pabulum, -i, n., *fodder.*
secari ..... seco, -are, secui, sectum, 1, *to cut.*
aedificiis ..... aedificium, -i, n. (*a building*), *a barn.*
cotidie ..... adv., *daily.*
deleri ..... deleo, -ēre, delevi, deletum, 2, *to cut off, destroy.*
5. rei familiaris ..... res familiaris, rei familiaris, f., *private property.*
vicos ..... vicus, -i, m., *a village.*
oportere ..... oportet, -ēre, oportuit (impers.), 2, *to be necessary.*

pabulandi ..... pabulor, -ari, 1, *to forage.*
6. suppetere ..... suppeto, -ĕre, suppetivi, suppetitum, 3, *to be at hand.*
opibus ..... opes, -um, f., *resources.*
8. interesse ..... interest, interesse, interfuit (impers.), *to be of importance.*
exuant ..... exuo, -ĕre, exui, exutum, 3, *to despoil of.*
9. detrectandam ..... detrecto, -are, 1, *to avoid.*
receptacula ..... receptaculum, -i, n., *a retreat.*
10. gravia ..... gravis, -e, *cruel, severe.*
acerba ..... acerbus, -a, -um, *painful.*
15, 2. prope ..... adv., *almost.*
explorata ..... exploratus, -a, -um (partic. pass. exploro), *certain.*
reciperaturos ..... recipero, -are, 1, *to recover.*
4. procumbunt ..... procumbo, -ĕre, procubui, procubitum, 3, *to prostrate oneself.*
5. palude ..... palus, -udis, f., *a marsh.*
circumdata ..... circumdo, -ăre, circumdedi, circumdătum, 1, *to place round.*
perangustum ..... perangustus, -a, -um, *very narrow.*
6. venia ..... venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, concession.*
idonei ..... idoneus, -a, -um, *suitable.*
16, 1. deligit ..... deligo, -ĕre, delegi, delectum, 3, *to choose.*
silvis ..... silva, -ae, f., *a forest.*
3. frumentationes ..... frumentatio, -onis, f., *search for supplies.*
adoriebatur ..... adorior, -iri, adortus sum, 4, *to attack.*
17, 1. aggerem ..... agger, -eris, m., *a bank, mound.*
apparare ..... apparo, -are, 1, *to prepare.*
vineas ..... vinea, -ae, f., *a mantlet, vent-house.*
2. adiuvabant ..... adiuvo, -are, adiuvi, adiutum, 1, *to give help.*
facultatibus ..... facultas, -atis, f., *power, opportunity.*
exigua ..... exiguus, -a, -um, *small.*
3. tenuitate ..... tenuitas, -atis, f., *poverty.*
indiligentia ..... indiligentia, -ae, f., *half-heartedness.*
complures ..... complures, complura, *many.*
caruerint ..... careo, -ēre, 2, *to lack.*
pecore ..... pecus, -oris, n., *cattle.*
longinquioribus ... longinquior, -ius (compar. of longinquus, -a, -um), *more distant.*
famem ..... fames, -is, f., *hunger.*
maiestate ..... maiestas, -atis, f., *greatness, majesty.*
superioribus ..... superior, -ius (*superior*), *former.*
4. quinetiam ..... *nay further.*
universi ..... universi, -ae, -a, *all, to a man.*
5. meruisse ..... mereo, -ēre, 2 (sc. stipendia), *to earn pay, serve.*
infecta ..... infectus, -a, -um, *unaccomplished.*

6. inceptam ..... incĭpio, -ĕre, incepi, inceptum, 3, *to begin.*
7. acerbitates ..... acerbitas, -atis, f., *hardship.*
parentarent ..... parento, -are, 1, *to avenge.*
8. mandabant ..... mando, -are, 1, *to commit to the charge of.*

18, 1. consuessent ..... 3rd plur. plupf. subj. of consuesco, -ĕre. consuevi, consuetum, 3, *to become accustomed to.*
insidiarum ..... insidiae, -arum, f., *an ambuscade.*
2. mane ..... indecl., *in the morning.*
3. carros ..... carrus, -i, m., *a waggon.*
artiores ..... artior, -ius (compar. of artus, -a, -um), *more confined.*
edito ..... editus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of ēdo), *elevated.*
4. sarcinas ..... sarcina, -ae, f., *a soldier's kit.*

19, 1. collis ..... collis, -is, m., *a hill.*
leniter ..... adv., *gently.*
acclivis ..... acclivis, -e, *sloping.*
cingebat..... cingo, -ĕre, cinxi, cinctum, 3, *to surround.*
2. fiducia ..... fiducia, -ae, f., *confidence.*
generatim ..... adv., *state by state.*
vada ..... vadum, -i, n., *a ford.*
saltus ..... saltus, -ūs, m., *a pass.*
3. haesitantes ..... haesito, -are, 1, *to stick in the mud.*
propinquitatem..... propinquitas, -atis, f., *nearness.*
aequo ..... aequus, -a, -um, *on equal terms.*
Marte ..... Mars, Martis, m. (*the god of war*), *warfare.*
iniquitatem ..... iniquitas, -atis, f. (*inequality*), *disadvantage.*
condicionis..... condicio, -onis, f., *condition, circumstance.*
inani ..... inanis, -e, *idle, vain.*
4. indignantes ..... indignor, -ari, 1, *to chafe.*
tantulo ..... tantulus, -a, -um, *so small.*
constare..... consto, -are, constiti, constatum, 1 (*to stand at*), *to cost.*
5. iniquitatis ..... iniquitas, -atis, f., *wrong-doing.*
cariorem..... carior, -ius (compar. of carus, -a, -um), *dearer.*

20, 2. fortuito ..... adv., *by chance.*
malle ..... malo, malle, malui, *to prefer.*
3. inopia..... inopia, -ae, f., *scarcity.*
opportunitate ..... opportunitas, -atis, f., *fitness.*
4. vero ..... adv., *indeed.*
illic..... adv., *there.*
quo ..... adv., *whither.*
5. mollitiem ..... mollities, -ei, f., *weakness.*
6. indicio ..... indicium, -i, n., *information.*
gratiam ..... gratia, -ae, f., *gratitude.*

turpiter ..... adv., *in a cowardly way.*
9. vinculis ..... vinculum, -i, n., *a fetter.*
excruciaverat ..... excrucio, -are, 1, *to torture.*
10. adductos ..... adduco, -ĕre, adduxi, adductum, 3, *to drive to, induce to.*
clam ..... adv., *by stealth.*
11. premi ..... premo, -ĕre, pressi, pressum, 3, *to press.*
profecissent ..... prōficio, -ĕre, prōfeci, prōfectum, 3, *to succeed.*
deducere ..... deduco, -ĕre, deduxi, deductum, 3, *to lead away.*
21, 1. concrepat ..... concrepo, -are, -crepui, -crepitum, 1, *to clash.*
3. censent ..... censeo, -ēre, censui, censum, 2, *to decree.*
penes ..... prep., *in the hands of.*
22, 1. sollertiae ..... sollertia, -ae, f., *cleverness.*
2. laqueis ..... laqueus, -i, m., *a noose.*
falces ..... falx, falcis, f. (*a sickle*), *a siege-hook.*
destinaverant ..... destino, -are, 1, *to secure.*
tormentis ..... tormentum, -i, n., *a windlass.*
introrsus..... adv., *within.*
reducebant..... reduco, -ĕre, reduxi, reductum, 3, *to bring back.*
cuniculis..... cuniculum, -i, n., *a mine.*
scientius..... adv., *more skilfully.*
ferrariae..... ferraria, -ae, f., *an iron-mine.*
3. contabulaverant ... contabulo, -are, 1 (*to board over*), *build up in stories.*
coriis ..... corium, -i, n., *a hide.*
4. cotidianus ..... cotidianus, -a, -um, *daily.*
expresserat ..... exprimo, -ĕre, expressi, expressum, 3 (*to press out*), *to lift.*
5. malis ..... malus, -i, f. (*an apple-tree*), *a beam.*
praeusta..... praeustus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of praeuro), *burnt at the end.*
praeacuta ..... praeacutus, -a, -um, *pointed.*
materia ..... materia, -ae, f., *timber.*
pice..... pix, picis, f., *pitch.*
fervefacta ..... fervefacio, -ĕre, fervefeci, fervefactum, 3, *to make to boil.*
23, 1. trabes ..... trabs, -is, f., *a beam.*
directae ..... directus, -a, -um (part. pass. of dirigo), *straight.*
perpetuae ..... perpetuus, -a, -um, *all of one piece.*
binos ..... bini, -ae, -a, *two each.*
2. effarciuntur ..... effarcio, -ire (no perf.), effertum, 4, *to pack.*
3. coagmentatis..... coagmento, -are, 1, *to bind together.*
insuper ..... adv., *on the top.*
4. iusta ..... iustus, -a, -um, *right, correct.*
5. deforme ..... deformis, -e, *unsightly.*

lapis ..... lapis, -idis, m. (*a stone*), *stonework.*
ariete ..... aries, -ĕtis, m., *a ram.*
quadragenos ..... quadrāgeni, -ae, -a, *forty each.*
24, 1. assiduis ..... assiduus, -a, -um, *continuous.*
tardarentur ..... tardo, -are, 1, *to delay.*
continenti ..... continens, -entis, *ceaseless.*
2. fumare ..... fumo, -are, 1, *to smoke.*
4. faces ..... fax, facis, f., *a fire-brand.*
aridam ..... aridus, -a, -um, *dry.*
materiem ..... materies, -ei, f., *faggots.*
eminus ..... adv., *from a distance.*
5. partitis ..... partior, -iri, 4, *to share.*
interscinderent ..... interscindo, -ĕre, interscidi, interscissum, 3, *to cut through.*
25, 1. redintegraretur ..... redintegro, -are, 1, *to renew.*
deustos ..... deustus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of deuro), *burnt.*
pluteos ..... pluteus, -i, m., *a breast-work.*
vestigio ..... vestigium, -i, n. (*a foot-step*), *a point.*
praetereundum ..... praetereo, -ire, praeterii, praeteritum, 4, *to omit.*
2. sebi ..... sebum, -i, -n., *fat.*
glaebas ..... glaeba, -ae, f., *a lump.*
scorpione ..... scorpio, -onis, m. (*a scorpion*), *an engine for throwing missiles.*
exanimatus ..... exanimatus, -a, -um, *dead.*
concidit ..... concīdo, -ĕre, concīdi, concasum, 3, *to fall.*
3. munere ..... munus, -eris, n., *duty.*
fungebatur ..... fungor, -i, functus sum, 3, *to perform.*
ictu ..... ictus, -ūs, m., *a blow.*
4. propugnatoribus ... propugnator, -oris, m., *a defender.*
vacuus ..... vacuus, -a, -um, *void.*
26, 1. experti ..... experior, -iri, expertus sum, 4, *to try.*
2. conati ..... conor, -ari, 1, *to attempt.*
iactura ..... iactura, -ae, f., *loss.*
perpetua ..... perpetuus, -a, -um, *unbroken.*
3. matres familiae ... mater familias or familiae, matris familias or familiae, f., *a matron.*
repente ..... adv., *suddenly.*
4. perstare ..... persto, perstare, perstiti, perstatum, 1, *to stand firm.*
27, 1. directis ..... dirigo, -ĕre, direxi, directum, 3, *to put into line.*
incautius ..... adv., *rather carelessly.*
languidius ..... adv., *rather idly.*
versari ..... versor, -ari, 1, *to occupy oneself.*
ostendit ..... ostendo, -ĕre, ostendi, ostensum and ostentum, 3, *to display, tell.*
2. aliquando ..... adv., *at last.*

3. evolaverunt ..... evolo, -are, 1, *to dash out.*
28, 1. foro ..... forum, -i, n., *a market-square.*
patentioribus..... patentior, -ius, *more open.*
cuneatim ..... adv., *in the form of a wedge.*
acie ..... acies, -ei, f., *battle-array.*
instructa ..... instruo, -ĕre, instruxi, instructum, 3, *to draw up in order.*
2. omnino ..... adv., *altogether.*
continenti ..... continens, -entis, *unbroken.*
4. confectis ..... conficio, -ĕre, confeci, confectum, 3, *to wear out.*
6. familiaribus ..... familiaris, -is, com., *a friend.*
disparandos ..... disparo, -are, 1, *to divide.*
29, 2. imperiti ..... imperitus, -a, -um, *inexperienced.*
3. proventus ..... proventus, -ūs, m., *the issue, result.*
4. testes ..... testis, -is, com., *a witness.*
nimia ..... nimius, -a, -um, *excessive.*
obsequentia ..... obsequentia, -ae, f., *indulgence.*
5. sanaturum..... sano, -are, 1 (*to heal*), *to repair.*
6. consensui ..... consensus, -ūs, m., *unanimity.*
7. impetrari ..... impetro, -are, 1, *to obtain.*
repentinos..... repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
30, 2. integra ..... integer, integra, integrum, *unimpaired.*
3. minuunt..... minuo, -ĕre, minui, minutum, 3, *to lessen.*
4. insueti ..... insuetus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed.*
31, 1. pollicitus ..... polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus sum, 2, *to undertake, promise.*
alliciebat ..... allicio, -ĕre, allexi, allectum, 3, *to entice.*
2. subdola ..... subdolus, -a, -um, *crafty.*
4. sagittarios..... sagittarius, -i, m., *an archer.*
conquiri ..... conquiro, -ĕre, conquisivi, conquisitum, 3, *to seek out.*
depeiierat ..... depereo, -ire, deperii, *to be lost.*
32, 1. complures ..... complures, -a (*many*), *several.*
commoratus ..... commoror, -ari, 1, *to halt.*
2. elicere..... .. elicio, -ĕre, elicui and elexi, elicitum, 3, *to entice.*
3. antiquitus ..... adv., *from ancient times.*
4. florentem ..... florens, -entis, *in flourishing circumstances.*
cognationis ..... cognatio, -onis, f., *family connections.*
5. clientelas ..... clientela, -ae, f., *a body of adherents.*
6. alatur..... alo, -ĕre, alui, altum and alitum, 3, *to foster.*
confligat..... confligo, -ĕre, -flixi, -flictum, 3, *to come to blows.*
33, 1. etsi ..... conj., *although.*
detrimentosum..... detrimentosus, -a, -um, *damaging.*
coniuncta ..... coniunctus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of coniungo), *allied.*

3. convenisset ..... convenio, -ire, conveni, conventum, 4, *to come together.*
clam ..... adv., *secretly.*
renuntiatum ..... renuntio, -are, 1, *to declare* (*elected*).
vetarent ..... veto, -are, vetui, vetitum, 1, *to forbid.*
sacerdotes ..... sacerdos, -otis, com., *a priest or priestess.*
intermissis ..... intermitto, -ĕre, intermisi, intermissum, 3, *to discontinue.*

34, 2. secundum ..... prep., *along.*

35, 1. fere ..... adv., *almost.*
necubi ..... conj., *lest anywhere.*
2. vado ..... vadum, -i, n., *a ford.*
3. rescindendos ..... rescindo, -ĕre, rescidi, rescissum, 3, *to break down.*
4. distractis ..... distraho, -ĕre, distraxi, distractum, 3, *to draw off.*
5. sublicis ..... sublica, -ae, f., *a pile, stake.*

36, 1. quintis ..... quintus, -a, -um, *fifth.*
situ ..... situs, -ūs, m., *situation.*
expedisset ..... expedio, -ire, 4, *to make arrangements for.*
2. separatim ..... adv., *separately.*
iugi ..... iugum, -i, n. (*a yoke*), *a ridge.*
3. delegerat ..... deligo, -ĕre, delegi, delectum, 3, *to select.*
cotidie ..... adv., *every day.*
5. radicibus ..... radix, -icis, f. (*a root*), *the foot of a hill.*
egregie ..... adv., *admirably.*
circumcisus ..... perf. part. pass. of circumcīdo (*cut off from the country around*), *precipitous.*
6. nimis ..... adv., *in too great a degree.*
7. duplicem ..... duplex, -icis, *double.*
duodenum ..... gen. of duodeni, -ae, -a, *twelve each.*
commeare ..... commeo, commeare, 1, *to pass to and fro.*

37, 1. amplissima ..... amplissimus, -a, -um, *very powerful.*
3. traducta ..... traduco, -ĕre, traduxi, traductum, 3, *to bring over.*
5. disceptatorem ..... disceptator, -oris, m., *an umpire.*
6. deductis ..... deduco, -ĕre, deduxi, deductum, 3 (*to bring down*), *to win over.*
ratio ..... ratio, -onis, f., *a method.*
temere ..... adv., *rashly, without adequate cause.*

38, 1. lacrimans ..... lacrimo, -are, 1, *to weep.*
2. indicta ..... indictus, -a, -um (*unsaid*), *unpleaded.*
5. occultasse ..... occulto, -are, 1, *to conceal.*
6. obsecrant ..... obsecro, -are, 1, *to adjure.*
7. quasi ..... conj., *as though.*
vero ..... adv., *in truth.*
contendere ..... contendo, -ĕre, contendi, contentum, 3, *to hurry towards a place.*

8. nefario ..... nefarius, -a, -um, *foul, disgraceful.*
facinore ..... facinus, -oris, n., *a crime.*
admisso ..... admitto, -ĕre, admisi, admissum, 3, *to commit.*
proinde ..... *wherefore.*
latrones ..... latro, -onis, m., *a brigand.*
9. fiducia..... fiducia, -ae, f., *reliance.*
10. mendacio ..... mendacium, -i, n., *a falsehood.*
39, 1. humili..... humilis, -e, *humble.*
nominatim .. ..... adv., *by name.*
3. pravis ..... pravus, -a, -um, *evil.*
4. momento..... momentum, -i, n., *moment, worth.*
40, 1. indulserat ..... indulgeo, -ēre, indulsi, indultum, 2, *to show indulgence to.*
2. contrahenda ..... contraho, -ĕre, contraxi, contractum, 3 (*to draw together*), *to reduce in size.*
3. repperit ..... reperio, -ire, repperi, repertum, 4, *to find out.*
4. cupidissimis ..... cupidissimus, -a, -um, *most enthusiastic.*
5. versari..... versor, -ari, 1, *to busy oneself.*
6. tendere ..... tendo, -ĕre, tetendi, tentum, 3, *to stretch out.*
deprecari ..... deprecor, -ari, 1, *to pray for exemption from.*
7. clientibus ..... cliens, -entis, m., *a retainer.*
nefas ... ..... indecl. noun, n., *a crime, disgrace.*
patronos..... patronus, -i, m., *a lord.*
41, 2. defetigarent ..... defetigo, -are, 1, *to weary out.*
3. vulneratos ..... vulnero, -are, 1, *to wound.*
4. obstruere ..... obstruo, -ĕre, obstruxi, obstructum, 3, *to block up.*
ceteras..... acc. fem. ceteri, -ae, -a, *the rest.*
pluteos ..... pluteus, -i, m., *a breastwork.*
42, 2. iracundia ..... iracundia, -ae, f., *anger.*
temeritas ..... temeritas, -atis, f., *recklessness.*
levem ..... lĕvis, -e, *idle, worthless.*
auditionem..... auditio, -onis, f. (*hearing*), *hearsay.*
comperta ..... ..... comperio, -ire, comperi, compertum, 4, *to ascertain.*
4. proclinatam ..... proclino, -are, 1, *to bend in a certain direction.*
sanitatem ..... sanitas, -atis, f. (*health*), *sanity.*
pudeat..... pudet, -ēre, puduit or puditum est (impers.), 2, *to be a source of shame.*
6. exuunt..... ... exuo, -ĕre, exui, exutum, 3, *to strip.*
repugnantes ..... repugno, -are, 1, *to resist.*
43, 1. quaestionem ..... quaestio, -onis, f., *an inquiry.*
decernunt ..... decerno, -ĕre, decrevi, decretum, 3, *to decree.*

2. publicant ..... publico, -are, 1, *to confiscate.*
purgandi..... purgo, -are, 1, *to exonerate.*
3. contaminati ..... contamino, -are, 1, *to taint.*
capti ..... capio, -ĕre, cepi, captum, 3, *to take captive.*
compendio ..... compendium, -i, n., *profit.*
4. tametsi ..... conj., *although.*
quam mitissime..... adv., *as mildly as possible.*
inscientiam ..... inscientia, -ae, f., *witlessness.*
levitatem ..... levitas, -atis (*instability*), *excitability.*
volgi ..... volgus, -i, n., *the populace.*
gravius ..... adv., *more severely.*
5. rursus ..... adv., *again.*

44, 1. facultas ..... facultas, -atis, f., *an opportunity.*
nudatum ..... nudatus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of nudo), *bare.*
2. admiratus ..... admiror, -ari, 1, *to be astonished.*
perfugis ..... perfuga, -ae, m., *a deserter.*
3. dorsum ..... dorsum, -i, n. (*the back*), *a ridge.*

45, 1. turmas ..... turma, -ae, f., *a squadron of horse.*
tumultuosius..... adv., *in somewhat disorderly fashion.*
2. mulorum ..... mulus, -i, m., *a mule.*
stramenta ..... stramentum, -i, n. (*straw*), *a pack-saddle.*
muliones ..... mulio, -onis, m., *a muleteer.*
cassidibus ..... cassis, -idis, f., *a helmet.*
7. vacua ..... vacuus, -a, -um, *empty.*
insignibus ..... insignia, -ium, n., *accoutremen*
signis ..... signum, -i, n., *a standard.*
raros ..... rarus, -a, -um (*widely distributed*), *in small bodies.*
9. occasionis ..... occasio, -onis, f., *opportunity.*

46, 1. planicie ..... planicies, -ei, f., *a level plain.*
amfractus ..... amfractus, -ūs, m., *a winding.*
2. molliendum ..... mollio, -ire, 4, *to render easier.*
clivum ..... clivus, -i, m., *a slope.*
4. trinis ..... trini, -ae, -a (*three apiece*), *three.*
5. tabernaculo ..... tabernaculum, -i, n., *a hut.*
conquieverat ..... conquiesco, -ĕre, conquievi, conquietum, 3, *to take rest.*

47, 1. receptui ..... receptus, -ūs, m., *a retreat.*
continuo..... adv., *at once.*
2. tubae ..... tuba, -ae, f., *a trumpet.*
5. prominentes ..... promineo, -ēre, 2, *to lean over.*
passis ..... pando, -ĕre, pandi, pansum and passum, 3, *to stretch out.*
7. manipulares ..... manipularis, -is, m., *a soldier of a maniple.*
sublevatus ..... sublevo, -are, 1, *to lift up.*
exceptans ..... excepto, -are, 1, *to keep taking up.*

48, 1. interim ..... adv., *meanwhile.*
3. capillum ..... capillus, -i, m., *hair.*

**49**, 3. exspectabat ..... exspecto, -are, 1, *to wait for.*
**50**, 1. comminus ..... adv., *at close quarters.*
manus..... manus, -ūs, f. (*a hand*), *a military force.*
distinendae ..... distineo, -ēre, distinui, distentum, 2 (*to hold apart*), *to spread out.*
2. umeris..... umerus, -i, m., *the shoulder.*
exsertis ..... partic. pass. of exsero, *protruding from the dress, uncovered.*
pacatorum ..... pacatus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of paco), *friendly.*
6. auxiliari..... auxilior, -ari, 1, *to aid.*
**51**, 1. intolerantius ..... adv., *somewhat rashly.*
**52**, 3. quanto opere . . .
tanto opere..... *as greatly as . . . so greatly.*
licentiam ..... licentia, -ae, f., *insubordination.*
4. modestiam..... modestia, -ae, f., *self-restraint.*
continentiam..... continentia, -ae, f., *coolness, collectedness.*
**53**, 2. secundo ..... secundus, -a, -um (*favourable*), *successful.*
3. minuendam ..... minuo, -ĕre, minui, minutum, 3, *to decrease.*
4. reficit ..... reficio, -ĕre, refeci, refectum, 3, *to repair.*
**54**, 2. admaturari..... admaturo, -are, 1, *to hasten.*
iniuriam..... iniuria, -ae, f., *an insult.*
3. humiles ..... humilis, -e (*humble*), *degraded.*
multatos..... multo or mulcto, -are, 1 (*to fine*), *to rob.*
imposito ..... impono, -ĕre, imposui, impositum, 3, *to lay upon.*
stipendio ..... stipendium, -i, n., *tribute.*
extortis ..... extorqueo, -ēre, extorsi, extortum, 2, *to wring from.*
4. pristinum ..... pristinus, -a, -um, *old, former.*
dignitatem..... dignitas, -atis, f., *honour.*
gratiam ..... gratia, -ae, f., *influence.*
antecessisse ..... antecedo, -ĕre, antecessi, antecessum, 3, *to outrun.*
**55**, 1. opportuno ..... opportunus, -a, -um, *convenient.*
3. coëmptum ..... coëmo, -ĕre, coëmi, coëmptum, 3, *to buy.*
5. custodibus..... custos, -ōdis, com., *a guardian.*
6. partiti..... partior, -iri, 4, *to divide.*
8. avexerunt ..... aveho, -ĕre, avexi, avectum, 3, *to carry off.*
corruperunt ..... corrumpo, -ĕre, corrupi, corruptum, 3, *to spoil.*
9. iniciendi..... inicio, -ĕre, inieci, iniectum, 3, *to cast into.*
10. nivibus ..... nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
creverat ..... cresco, -ĕre, crevi, cretum, 3, *to increase* (intrans.).
omnino ..... adv., *altogether.*
**56**, 1. periclitandum ..... periclitor, -ari, 1 (*to put to the test*), *to run a risk.*
coactae ..... cogo, -ĕre, coëgi, coactum, 3, *to muster.*

2. infamia ..... infamia, -ae, f., *disgrace.*
indignitas ..... indignitas, -atis, f., *dishonour.*
3. opinionem ..... opinio, -onis, f., *expectation.*
4. bracchia ..... bracchium, -i, n., *the arm.*
disposito ..... dispono, -ĕre, disposui, dispositum, 3, *to arrange.*
refringeret ..... refringo, -ĕre, refregi, refractum, 3, *to break.*
5. repleto ..... repleo, -ēre, replevi, repletum, 2 (*to fill*), *to satisfy.*

57, 3. prope ..... adv., *almost.*
singularem ..... singularis, -e, *unique.*
4. consedit ..... consideo, -ēre, consedi, consessum, 2, *to encamp.*

58, 1. vineas ..... vinea, -ae, f., *a mantlet.*
cratibus ..... crates, -ium, f. (*hurdles*), *fascines.*
2. confieri ..... confio, confieri, *to be effected.*
4. deprensis ..... deprendo or deprehendo, -ĕre, deprendi, deprensum, 3, *to seize.*
oppidanis ..... oppidanus, -i, m., *a townsman.*
5. resciderant ..... rescindo, -ĕre, rescĭdi, rescissum, 3, *to break down.*

59, 1. colloquiis ..... colloquium, -i, n., *a conference.*
interclusum ..... intercludo, -ĕre, interclusi, interclusum, 3, *to shut off.*
3. commutatione ..... commutatio, -onis, f., *a change.*
4. lacesseret ..... lacesso, -ĕre, lacessivi, lacessitum, 3, *to harass.*
5. opinionem ..... opinio, -onis, f., *reputation.*
instabant ..... insto, -are, institi (no supine), 1, *to press on.*
distinebat ..... distineo, -ēre, distinui, distentum, 2, *to separate.*

60, 1. industrie ..... adv., *with energy.*
4. conquirit ..... conquiro, -ĕre, conquisivi, conquisitum, 3, *to collect.*
lintres ..... linter, -tris, f., *a small boat.*
remorum ..... remus, -i, m., *an oar.*
incitatas ..... incito, -are, 1, *to propel.*

61, 1. inopinantes ..... inopinans, -antis, *off one's guard.*
2. negotio ..... negotium, -i, n., *duty, business.*
praefecerat ..... praeficio, -ĕre, praefeci, praefectum, 3, *to appoint.*

62, 2. ductu ..... ductus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*
3. dextro ..... dexter, -tra, -trum, *right* (*hand*).
cornu ..... cornu, -ūs, n. (*a horn*), *a wing of an army.*
4. sinistro ..... sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (*hand*).
6. exitu ..... exitus, -ūs, m., *the result.*
ostenderunt ..... ostendo, -ĕre, ostendi, ostentum or ostensum, 3, *to display.*

7. cessit ..... cedo, -ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3, *to quit one's position.*
8. subsidio ..... subsidium, -i, n., *an auxiliary force.*
63, 2. valent..... valeo, -ēre, 2, *to be able.*
nituntur..... nitor, -i, nisus or nixus sum, 3, *to strive.*
5. impetrata ..... impetro, -are, 1, *to gain.*
contendunt ..... contendo, -ĕre, contendi, contentum, 3 (*to contend*), *to insist.*
6. frequentes ..... frequens, -entis (*frequent, repeated*), plur., *in great numbers.*
suffragiis ..... suffragium, -i, n., *a vote.*
permittitur ..... permitto, -ĕre, permisī, permissum, 3, *to commit, entrust.*
7. premebantur..... premo, -ĕre, pressi, pressum, 3, *to harass.*
neutris ..... neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*
9. inviti .. ..... invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling.*
64, 3. rei familiaris..... res familiaris, rei familiaris, f., *private means.*
iactura ..... iactura, -ae, f., *loss, sacrifice.*
6. pagos ..... pagus, -i, m., *a canton.*
7. clandestinis ..... clandestinus, -a, -um, *secret.*
resedisse ..... resīdo, -ĕre, resēdi, 3, *to grow calm.*
65, 3. crebris ..... creber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*
tuentur ..... tueor, -eri (no perf.), 2, *to guard.*
4. sublevari ..... sublevo, -are, 1, *to relieve.*
pacaverat ..... paco, -are, 1, *to reduce to peace.*
armaturae ..... armatura, -ae, f., *equipment.*
5. sumit ..... sumo, -ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *to take.*
66, 4. obtinendam ..... obtineo, -ēre, obtinui, obtentum, 2, *to secure.*
parum..... adv., *little.*
reversuros ..... revertor, -i (the perf. reversus sum is usually replaced by reverti), *to come back.*
adoriantur ..... adorior, -iri, adortus sum, 4, *to attack.*
5. spoliatum ..... spŏlio, -are, 1, *to deprive.*
7. perequitasset..... perequito, -are, 1, *to ride through.*
67, 1. adactis ..... adigo, -ĕre, adegi, adactum, 3 (*to drive to*), *to bind* (*by oath*).
2. tripertito ..... adv., *into three parts.*
6. mandant ..... mando, -are, 1, *to commit to.*
68, 1. fugato ..... fugo, -are, 1, *to rout.*
protenus..... adv., *at once.*
subsequi..... subsequor, -i, subsecutus sum, 3, *to follow.*
69, 1 admodum ..... adv., *considerably.*
edito ..... editus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of ēdo), *elevated.*
4. fastigio ..... fastigium, -i, n., *the summit.*

5. maceriam ..... maceria, -ae, f., *a wall.*
praeduxerant..... praeduco, -ĕre, praeduxi, praeductum, 3, *to carry along.*
7. castella ..... castellum, -i, n., *a redoubt.*
interdiu ..... adv., *in the daytime.*
stationes ..... statio, -onis, f., *a picket.*
excubitoribus..... excubitor, -oris, m., *a night-watch.*
70, 1. patere..... pateo, -ēre, 2, *to lie open.*
2. summittit ..... summitto, -ĕre, summisi, summissum, 3, *to send to aid.*
3. coacervantur ..... coacervo, -are, 1, *to crowd together.*
6. confestim ..... adv., *forthwith.*
7. nudentur ..... nudo, -are, 1 (*to strip*), *to leave empty.*
71, 2. mandat ..... mando, -are, 1, *to commission.*
obtestatur ..... obtestor, -ari, 1, *to beg.*
rationem ..... ratio, -onis, f., *regard, consideration.*
cruciatum ..... cruciatus, -ūs, m., *torture.*
indiligentiores ..... indiligentior, -ius, *somewhat remiss.*
interitura ..... intereo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *to perish.*
4. inita ..... ineo, -ire, -ii, -itum, *to undertake.*
exigue..... adv., *barely.*
tolerare ..... tolero, -are, 1, *to hold out, endure.*
7. viritim ..... adv., *man by man.*
parce ..... adv., *sparingly.*
paulatim ..... adv., *gradually.*
metiri ..... metior, -iri, mensus sum, 4, *to measure out.*
72, 1. perfugis ..... perfuga, -ae, m., *a deserter.*
fossam..... fossa, -ae, f., *trench.*
directis ..... directus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of dirigo, -ĕre, direxi, directum), *perpendicular.*
solum ..... solum, -i, n. (*the ground*), *the bottom.*
tantundem..... adv., *just so far.*
labra ..... labrum, -i, n. (*a lip*), *an edge.*
distarent ..... disto, -are (no perf. or supine), 1, *to be distant.*
2. complexus ..... complector, -i, complexus sum, 3, *to take in, embrace.*
de improviso ..... adv., *unexpectedly.*
advolaret ..... advolo, -are, 1, *to make a rush upon.*
3. campestribus..... campestris, -e, *level.*
demissis ..... demissus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of demitto), *low-lying.*
derivata ..... derivo, -are, 1, *to draw (water) from.*
4. loricam ..... lorica, -ae, f., *a breast-work.*
pinnas ..... pinna, -ae, f. (*a wing*), *a battlement.*
cervis ..... cervi, -orum, m., *chevaux-de-frise.*
eminentibus ..... eminens, -entis, *projecting.*
commissuras..... commissura, -ae, f., *point of junction.*
73, 1. materiari ..... materior, -ari, 1, *to collect timber.*

2. admodum ..... adv., *very.*
delibratis ..... delibro, -are, 1, *to strip off the bark.*
praeacutis ..... praeacutus, -a,-um, *sharpened at the point.*
cacuminibus ..... cacumen, -inis, n., *a point.*
quinos..... quini, -ae, -a, *five each.*
3. stipites ..... stipes, -itis, m., *a trunk of a tree.*
revelli ..... revello, -ĕre, revelli, revulsum, 3, *to tear up.*
4. implicati..... implico, -are, -plicavi or -plicui, -plicatum or -plicitum, *to intertwine.*
vallis ..... vallus, -i, m., *a stake.*
cippos..... cippus, -i, m., *a gravestone.*
5. obliquis ..... obliquus, -a, -um, *oblique.*
quincuncem ..... quincunx, -uncis, m., *a quincunx.*
scrobes ..... scrobis, -is, m., *a pit.*
fastigio ..... fastigium, -i, n. (*a gable*), *a slope.*
6. teretes..... teres, -ĕtis, *smooth.*
feminis ..... femur, -oris or -inis, n., *the thigh.*
crassitudine ..... crassitudo, -inis, f., *thickness.*
praeusti ..... praeustus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of praeuro), *burnt at the end.*
7. exculcabantur ..... exculco, -are, 1, *to ram down.*
viminibus ..... vimen, -inis, n., *a branch.*
virgultis ..... virgultum, -i, n. (*a bush*), plur. *brushwood.*
8. octoni ..... octoni, -ae, -a (*eight each*), *eight.*
9. taleae ..... talea, -ae, f., *a block of wood.*
ferreis ..... ferreus, -a, -um, *of iron.*
hamis ..... hamus, -i, m., *a hook.*
disserebantur ..... dissero, -ĕre, disserui, dissertum, 3, *to strew about.*
stimulos ..... stimulus, -i, m., *a goad.*

74, 1. aequissimas ..... aequissimus, -a, -um, *most level.*
paris ..... par, paris, *equal.*
2. convectum..... conveho, -ĕre, convexi, convectum, 3, *to collect.*

75, 1. moderari ..... moderor, -ari, 1, *to control.*
3. duodena ..... duodeni, -ae, -a, *twelve each.*
octona ..... octoni, -ae, -a, *eight each.*
sena ..... seni, -ae, -a, *six each.*
terna ..... terni, -ae, -a, *three each.*
bina..... bini, -ae, -a, *two each.*
5. obtemperaturos..... obtempero, -are, 1, *to obey.*

76, 1. immunem ..... immunis, -e, *exempt from tribute.*
2. vindicandae ..... vindico, -are, 1, *to reassert.*
recuperandae..... recupero, -are, 1, *to recover.*
incumberent ..... incumbo, -ĕre, incubui, incubitum, 3 (*to lean upon*), *to devote oneself to.*
3. recensebantur ..... recenseo, -ēre, recensui, recensum and recensītum, 2, *to review.*

inibatur ..... ineo, -ire, inivi and inii, initum (*to undertake*), *to check* (*numbers*).
5. alacres..... alacer, -cris, -cre, *eager*.
fiduciae ..... fiducia, -ae, f., *confidence*.
praesertim..... adv., *especially*.
ancipiti ..... anceps, -cipitis, *double*.
foris..... adv., *on the outside*.
77, 2. suppeterent ..... suppeto, -ĕre, suppetivi or suppetii suppetitum, 3, *to suffice*.
nefariam..... nefarius, -a, -um, *abominable*.
3. adhibendos..... adhibeo, -ēre, adhibui, adhibitum, 2, *to admit*.
4. residere ..... resideo, -ēre, resedi (no supine), 2 (*to remain sitting*), *to linger*.
5. mollitia ..... mollitia, -ae, f., *effeminacy*.
paulisper..... adv., *for a little while*.
6. iacturam..... iactura, -ae, f., *loss*.
7. concitavimus ..... concito, -are, 1, *to rouse*.
8. propinquis ..... propinquus, -a, -um, *related by birth*.
consanguineis ..... consanguineus, -a, -um, *akin*.
cadaveribus ..... cadaver, -eris, n., *a corpse*.
decertare ..... decerto, -are, 1, *to fight*.
9. exspoliare ..... exspolio, -are, 1, *to rob*.
imbecillitate ..... imbecillitas, -atis, f., *weakness*.
prosternere..... prosterno, -ĕre, prostravi, prostratum, 3, *to bring to the ground*.
11. praesaepto ..... praesaepio, -ire, praesaepsi, praesaeptum, 4, *to block up*.
testibus ..... testis, -is, com., *a witness*.
12. subacti ..... subigo, -ĕre, subegi, subactum, 3, *to constrain*.
15. condicione ..... condicio, -onis, f., *condition, terms*.
16. finitimam ..... finitimus, -a, -um, *neighbouring*.
securibus ..... securis, -is, f., *an axe*.
78, 4. cibo..... cibum, -i, n., *food*.
79, 3. despectus ..... despectus, -ūs, m., *a view downwards*.
gratulatio ..... gratulatio, -onis, f., *congratulation*.
4. cratibus ..... crates, -ium, f. plur., *hurdles*.
80, 3. sagittarios..... sagittarius, -i, m., *an archer*.
expeditos ..... expeditus, -i, m., *a lightly equipped soldier*.
de improviso ..... *unexpectedly*.
4. ululatu ..... ululatus, -ūs, m., *a yell*.
6. occasum ..... occasus, -ūs, m., *setting* (*of the sun*).
confertis ..... confercio, -ire (no perf.), confertum, 4, *to mass together*.
turmis ..... turma, -ae, f., *a squadron*.
propulerunt ..... propello, -ĕre, propuli, propulsum, 3, *to drive before one*.

8. item ..... adv., *similarly*.
colligendi ..... colligo, -ĕre, collegi, collectum, 3, *to gather together*.
9. desperata ..... desperatus, -a, -um, *despaired of*.
81, 1. scalarum ..... scala, -ae, f., *a scaling-ladder*.
harpagonum ..... harpago, -onis, m., *a hook*.
2. fundis ..... funda, -ae, f., *a sling*.
proturbare ..... proturbo, -are, *to drive from*.
3. tuba ..... tuba, -ae, f., *a trumpet*.
4. librilibus ..... librile, -is, n., *a bolas*.
sudibus ..... sudis, -is, f., *a stake*.
glandibus ..... glans, glandis, f. (*an acorn*), *an acorn-shaped missile*.
5. tenebris ..... tenebrae, -arum, f. plur., *darkness*.
6. ulterioribus ..... ulterior, -ius, *more distant*.
castellis ..... castellum, -i, n., *a redoubt*.
82, 1. proficiebant ..... proficio, -ĕre, -feci, fectum, *to be successful*.
stimulis ..... stimulus, -i., m., *a spur*.
transfodiebantur ... transfodio, -ĕre, transfodi, transfossum, 3, *to transfix*.
pilis ..... pilum, -i, n., *a javelin*.
muralibus ..... muralis, -e, *of the walls*.
perrupta ..... perrumpo, -ĕre, perrupi, perruptum, 3, *to break through*.
appeteret ..... appeto, -ĕre, appetivi or appetii, appetitum, 3, *to approach*.
4. re infecta ..... abl. of res infecta, *with the end not accomplished*.
83, 1. peritos ..... peritus, -a, -um, *acquainted with*.
2. septentrionibus ..... septentriones, -um, m. plur. (*the constellation of the Wain*), *the north*.
circumplecti ..... circumplector, -i, circumplexus sum, 3, *to include*.
declivi ..... declivis, -e, *sloping*.
4. opinionem ..... opinio, -onis, f., *reputation*.
5. quoque pacto ..... *and in what manner*.
occulte ..... adv., *secretly*.
definiunt ..... definio, -ire, 4, *to fix, mark out*.
84, 1. conspicatus ..... conspicor, -ari, 1, *to catch sight of*.
longurios ..... longurius, -i, m., *a pole*.
musculos ..... musculus, -i, m., *a vent-house*.
falces ..... falx, falcis, f. (*a sickle*), *a siege-hook*.
3. manus ..... manus, -ūs, f. (*a hand*), *a military force*.
distinetur ..... distineo, -ēre, distinui, distentum, 2 (*to divide*), *to distract*.
4. exstitit ..... exsisto, -ĕre, exstiti, exstitum, 3, *to arise*.
aliena ..... alienus, -a, -um, *belonging to other people*.

constare ..... consto, -are, constiti, constatum, 1 (*to stand firm*), *to be involved in.*

85, 3. perfregerint ..... perfringo, -ĕre, perfregi, perfractum, 3, *to break through.*

4. momentum..... momentum, -i, n , *weight, power.*

6. suppetunt ..... suppeto, -ĕre, suppetivi or suppetii, suppetitum, 3, *to suffice.*

86, 4. praerupta ..... praeruptus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of praerumpo), *steep.*

87, 2. adoriri ..... adorior, -iri, adortus sum, 4, *to attack.*

3. fors ..... fors, fortis, f., *chance.*

intersit ..... intersum, interesse, interfui, *to take part in.*

88, 1. vestitus ..... vestitus, -us, m., *dress.*

consuerat ..... consuesco, -ĕre, consuevi, consuetum, 3, *to become accustomed to.*

devexa..... devexus, -a, -um (partic. pass. of deveho), *shelving downwards.*

3. omissis ..... omitto, -ĕre, omisi, omissum, 3, *to throw aside.*

6. deleri ..... deleo, -ēre, delevi, deletum, 2, *to annihilate.*

89, 2. satis facere ..... satis facio, facere, feci, factum, 3, *to make amends.*

5. reservatis ..... reservo, -are, 1, *to reserve.*

90, 7. hiemare ..... hiemo, -are, 1, *to winter.*

8. supplicatio..... supplicatio, -onis, f., *a public thanksgiving.*

redditur ..... reddo, -ĕre, reddidi, redditum, 3, *to give in return.*

# CAESAR

# DE BELLO GALLICO, VII.

## *A TRANSLATION.*

I. GAUL was now quiet, and as Caesar had designed, he started for Italy for the purpose of conducting the assizes. There he heard of Clodius' murder, and being informed of the Senate's decree that the entire population of Italy that was of age for military service should take the oath of allegiance, he commenced to make a levy throughout the entire province (of Gallia Cisalpina). This news was speedily passed on to Transalpine Gaul. The Gauls themselves added to the rumours and joined to them the unfounded statement that—as, indeed, the case seemed to demand—Caesar was detained by the disturbances in the capital, and could not come to his army in the midst of quarrels so serious. Prompted by such an opportunity, inasmuch as they had already for some time been annoyed at their subjection to the rule of the Roman people, they began to enter upon schemes of war with the greater freedom and boldness; and the leading men of Gaul, arranging conferences amid the woods and in secluded spots, spoke to one another with resentment about the execution of Acco. "A doom such as this," they pointed out, "may in turn fall upon ourselves." They deplored the common lot of Gaul, and with promises and offers of every kind called for men to make a beginning of war and re-assert the liberties of the land even at the risk of their own lives. Measures must, above all, be taken, they said, to cut off Caesar from his army, before their secret designs should be made

public; and this was an easy matter, because the legions dared not leave their winter quarters in the absence of their commander-in-chief, nor could he possibly reach his legions without a strong force at his back. In the very last case, it would be better to perish in battle than not to win back that old-established fame in war and that freedom which they had inherited from their forefathers.

II. While the matter was being thus discussed, the Carnutes declared that they shrank from no peril on behalf of the common weal, and promised to be the first of all to declare war. As they could not, for the present, use hostages as mutual security, for fear their action should be disclosed, they desired that security should be given on the oath and word of honour of all, with banners massed (after the fashion in which lies their most solemn ceremony), that the rest would not desert them when once the war had been begun. Thereupon, when the Carnutes had been warmly complimented and the oath taken by all who were present, a day was fixed for the event, and the conference broke up.

III. When the date was come, the Carnutes, with Gutruatus and Conconnetodumnus, men wrought up to desperation, as their leaders, made, on the signal being given, a sudden rush to Cenabum. The Roman citizens who had settled there for the purpose of trade, including one Gaius Fufius Cita, a worthy Roman knight, who was, by Caesar's appointment, superintendent of the corn supply, were slain and their property looted. The news was speedily borne to every tribe in Gaul. Whenever there occurs any matter of greater importance or note than usual, they signify it by cries from field to field, and from one district to another; others take up the cry in their turn and pass it on to the next. So it happened on this occasion, for though the deed had been done at Cenabum at sunrise, it was heard of in the lands of the Arverni—a distance of about a hundred and sixty miles—before the end of the first watch.

IV. There also and in like fashion Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, the son of Celtillus, and a young man of very great influence, whose father had held the overlordship over the whole of Gaul, and had been put to death by his tribe for aiming at sovereignty, assembled his retainers and easily roused

them to war. When the designs of Vercingetorix were known there was a rush to arms. His uncle Gobannitio, and the rest of the notables, who did not think that such a risk ought to be run, foiled him, and expelled him from the town of Gergovia. He did not, however, desist, but held a levy of the needy and desperate in the open country. Having got together a company of such men, he brought over to his views every one in the tribe to whom he made overtures. He exhorted them to take up arms for the sake of the national freedom; and when he had got together a large force he drove out of the state those of the opposite party by whom he had himself been expelled but a little while before. He was styled king by his followers, and despatched envoys in all directions, begging the Gauls to abide by their pledge. He speedily drew to his side the Senones, Parisii, Pictones, Cadurci, Turoni, Aulerci, Lemovices, Andi, and all the rest of the Gauls who extend as far as the Atlantic, and with the assent of all the chief command was conferred upon him. On receiving this authority he demanded hostages from all these States, and gave orders for a fixed number of troops to be brought up to him with all speed, and determined what quantity of arms each community was to turn out at home and by what dates. In particular he gave attention to his cavalry. Moreover, to remarkable energy he added remarkable strictness in his command, and constrained those who wavered by the severity of his punishments; for on the commission of any more serious offence he put men to death by burning and tortures of every kind, and for slighter reasons he sent them away home with their ears cut off or with an eye put out, so that they might be an example to the remainder, and might strike others with terror by the severity of their punishment.

V. When he had rapidly got together an army by such punishments, he despatched one Lucterius, a Cadurcian and a man of consummate daring, with a portion of his forces to the land of the Ruteni, while he himself started for the country of the Bituriges. On his coming the Bituriges sent envoys to the Aedui, whose dependents they were, to beg for aid, that they might the more easily be enabled to withstand the forces of the enemy. On the advice of the lieutenant-commanders whom Caesar had left behind with his army, the Aedui sent a force

of horse and foot to aid the Bituriges; but these, having come to the river Liger which divides the Bituriges from the Aedui, there waited for a few days, and then, without venturing to cross the stream, turned back homewards. They reported to our lieutenant-commanders that they had turned back because they were afraid of treachery on the part of the Bituriges: "we learnt," said they, "that their plan was to surround us if we had crossed the river, themselves from the one side and the Arverni from the other." As we have no clear evidence, it would seem that we must not lay it down for certain whether they acted so for the reason which they reported to our lieutenants, or because they were themselves actuated by treachery. As for the Bituriges, on the withdrawal of the Aedui, they at once joined the Arverni.

VI. When news of these events was brought to Caesar in Italy, he set off for Transalpine Gaul, as he was by this time aware that matters in Rome had arrived at a more satisfactory condition owing to the energy of Gnaeus Pompeius. On reaching Transalpine Gaul, he was beset with serious difficulty, as to the means by which he could make his way to his army; for if he should send for his legions to the Province, he was aware that they would have to give battle while on the march and without his own presence, and if he should make his way personally to his army, he saw that it was not right to entrust his safety at such a moment even to those peoples which still appeared pacific.

VII. Meanwhile Lucterius the Cadurcian, who had been sent to the Ruteni, won over that tribe to the Arverni, and moving on to the Nitiobroges and Gabali, he got hostages from both peoples; and when he had collected a considerable body of men he hastened to make an inroad upon the Province in the direction of Narbo. On the receipt of this intelligence Caesar considered that the march for Narbo must have precedence of every other plan. When he had arrived there, he reassured the terrified, and established guard-posts amongst the Ruteni of the Province, the Volci Arecomici, the people of Tolosa, and round about Narbo, places which lay nearest to the enemy. A portion of the troops from the Province, together with the reinforcements which he had

brought up from Italy, he ordered to assemble amongst the Helvii, who border upon the lands of the Arverni.

VIII. These preparations made, and Lucterius being now checked and driven back, as he deemed it unsafe to come within the line of guard-posts, Caesar set out for the Helvii. Although Mount Cevenna, which separates the Arverni from the Helvii, blocked his path with snow of great depth, it being the severest season of the year, nevertheless he had the snow, which was six feet in depth, cleared away and so laid the roads open, and reached the lands of the Arverni at the cost of great effort to his soldiery. That people were taken by surprise, for they believed themselves sheltered by Cevenna as by a wall, and even to individuals the roads had never been open at that season of the year. Caesar now ordered his cavalry to roam as far afield as might be, and to bring upon the enemy the utmost possible alarm. The report and news of it were quickly brought to Vercingetorix. The Arverni in a body beset him in their panic, and entreated him to take measures for their well-being, and that they might not be harried by their foes, especially as he saw that the whole burden of the war had been thrown upon them. Prevailed upon by their entreaties, he moved his camp from the Bituriges towards the Arverni.

IX. For two days Caesar halted in this locality, for he had foreseen in his own mind that this would happen with regard to Vercingetorix. He then left his army on the plea of collecting additional troops and cavalry, and appointed the young Brutus to command these forces. He gave him instructions that the cavalry should roam as far afield as possible in every direction, saying that he would take care not to be absent from the camp for more than three days. After making these arrangements, and while his own men were in ignorance, he made his way to Vienna by as long marches as possible. There he found in good condition the cavalry which he had sent thither some time before, and hurried by uninterrupted daily and nightly marches across the lands of the Aedui to the Lingones, where two of his legions were wintering, so that, in case even the Aedui were engaging in any designs upon his safety, he might by his rapid movement forestall them

Having made his way so far, he sent to the remaining legions and massed all at one point before news of his coming could reach the Arverni. Vercingetorix, on learning the fact, led his army back again to the land of the Bituriges, and moving thence commenced to besiege Gorgobina, the town of those Boii who had been conquered in the Helvetian war and whom Caesar had here settled and made tributary to the Aedui.

X. This circumstance caused Caesar great perplexity in forming a plan of action: for he feared that if he kept his legions in one spot for the remainder of the winter, these dependents of the Aedui would be reduced, and the whole of Gaul would revolt, because it would recognise that there was in Caesar no protection for his friends; if, on the other hand, he led his legions out of their winter quarters too early, he would be hampered on the score of supplies by reason of the difficulty of bringing them up. However it seemed advisable to incur every peril rather than put up with such an affront, and so estrange the goodwill of all his allies. Accordingly he urged the Aedui to bring up supplies, and sent forward messengers to the Boii to tell them of his coming, and to encourage them to remain loyal and withstand the enemy's assault with a stout heart. Leaving two legions and the baggage of the whole army at Agedincum, he marched for the Boii.

XI. Arriving on the second day at Vellaunodunum, a town of the Senones, he resolved to besiege it, in order to leave no hostile force in his rear, and so to procure supplies the more easily. In the space of two days he surrounded it with a wall, and when on the third day there were sent envoys from the town to treat about surrender, he ordered their arms to be collected, their beasts of burden to be brought out, and six hundred hostages to be given. He left behind him his lieutenant Gaius Trebonius to complete the business, while he moved in person for Cenabum of the Carnutes, in order to accomplish his march thither with all possible speed. The Carnutes were getting together a garrison to be sent to Cenabum to protect the town, for the news of the attack on Vellaunodunum had but just reached them, and they fancied it would be a protracted matter. Yet Caesar made his way to Cenabum in two days'

time. He pitched his camp before the town, but, being prevented from action by the late hour of the day, he postponed the attack to the next morning. He gave his soldiers orders for everything that might be of service to his purpose, and being apprehensive that the Gauls might evacuate the town in the night, as there was a bridge over the river Liger reaching to the town of Cenabum, he bade two legions keep watch under arms. A little before midnight the inhabitants of Cenabum left the town silently, and commenced to cross the river. The movement being made known to Caesar by scouts, he fired the gates and threw into the town the two legions which he had bidden to be in readiness for action. He thus got possession of the town, and very few of the enemy's number missed being made prisoners, because the narrowness of the bridge and pathways had blocked the escape of such a host. The town he looted and fired, giving the plunder to his troops; then led his army across the Liger and made his way to the lands of the Bituriges.

XII. On hearing of Caesar's arrival, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege of Gorgobina, and marched to meet him. Caesar had resolved to attack Noviodunum, a town of the Bituriges, which lay in his path; but when there came to him from the town envoys to beg him to pardon them and to spare their lives, he ordered their arms to be collected, their horses brought out, and hostages given to him, to the end that he might complete the rest of his purpose with the like despatch, wherewith he had attained to most of it. A portion of the hostages had already been handed over, and the other matters were being attended to, and some centurions with a few soldiers had been sent into the town to collect the implements of war and the horses, when the enemy's cavalry, which had moved on ahead of Vercingetorix' column, was descried in the distance. As soon as those in the town caught sight of them, and so came upon some hope of help, they raised their war-cry, and set about seizing their arms, closing the gates, and manning the wall. The centurions in the town, gathering from the significant action of the Gauls that there was some new plan afoot, drew their swords and seized the gates, so withdrawing in safety the whole of their men.

XIII. Caesar ordered his horsemen to be led out of camp, and engaged in a cavalry action; and when his men were already in difficulties he sent to their aid about four hundred German troopers, whom he had from the outset made a custom of keeping with him. The Gauls were unable to withstand their onset: they were put to flight, and withdrew to their main army with considerable loss. By their dispersal the townsmen were again terror-stricken: they seized those by whose doing they believed the populace had been aroused, led them to Caesar, and surrendered themselves to him. This matter ended, Caesar marched towards the town of Avaricum, the largest and best fortified in the territory of the Bituriges, and situated in a most productive tract of country, because he was confident that, if he could but recover this town, he would bring back the community of the Bituriges to his authority.

XIV. After incurring so many successive reverses at Vellaunodunum, Cenabum, and Noviodunum, Vercingetorix summoned his followers to a council of war. He told them that the war must be conducted in a manner far different from that in which it had previously been managed. "By every means," said he, "we must aim at this one end, that the Romans should be cut off from forage and supplies. It is an easy matter, for we have cavalry in plenty ourselves, and we are aided by the season of the year. No fodder can be cut, and our enemies must of necessity scatter and seek it in the barns, and every man of them can be cut off daily by our troopers. But further, for safety's sake, we must take no thought for the preservation of our property; the villages and the barns must be fired for such distance on every side from Boia as the Romans appear able to reach for foraging purposes. We ourselves have good store of such material, for we are supported by the resources of those within whose confines the war goes on; but the Romans will either not endure the lack of supplies, or advance considerable distances from their camp to their great risk. It makes no difference whether we slay them or only strip them of their baggage, for when that is lost the war cannot any longer be carried on. And further, we must have all such towns fired as are not secured against all danger by their fortifications or their natural position, to the end that they may not serve as retreats for our own men

to the avoidance of service, and that they may not be offered to the Romans for the seizure of supplies in plenty, and of booty. If such a policy seems cruel and painful, I count it far more cruel that our children and wives should be haled into slavery, and ourselves cut to pieces. Yet this is what must befall us if we are vanquished."

XV. This course was approved unanimously by all, and on one day there were fired more than twenty towns of the Bituriges. The same course was followed in the other states, and conflagrations were visible on every hand. Although all bore it with deep vexation, they put before themselves the consolation that, as their triumph was well-nigh certain, they were confident of speedily recovering what they had lost. About Avaricum there was a discussion in the general assembly, whether its burning or its defence should be resolved on. The Bituriges fell at the feet of all the Gauls, begging that they should not be forced to fire with their own hands a town that was well-nigh the fairest of all the land, and at once the fortress and ornament of their state: they could easily defend it, they asserted, owing to its natural position, for as a river and marsh surrounded it on almost every side, it had but one approach and that very narrow. They got the boon for which they asked, though Vercingetorix at first tried to dissuade them, and afterwards gave in only on the score of their own entreaties and the commiseration felt for them by the general body. There were selected suitable men to defend the town.

XVI. Vercingetorix followed hard upon Caesar by shorter marches, and chose for his camp a site which was defended by marshes and forests at sixteen miles' distance from Avaricum. There, by the agency of picked scouts, he kept himself informed at every hour of the day of what was going on about Avaricum, and gave orders for what he wished to be done. He kept watch upon all our movements in search of forage and supplies, and constantly attacked our men, who were scattered because they had perforce to advance somewhat far afield; indeed he visited us with no small annoyance, although, so far as could be foreseen, measures were taken by our men to defeat his plans, in such sort that they made their expeditions at hours and by routes which were constantly varied.

XVII. Pitching his camp on that side of the town which, as we have said above, offered a narrow approach, because it was not touched by the river and marshes, Caesar commenced to build a bank and advance his mantlets, and to erect a couple of siege-towers, for the nature of the ground prevented a blockade. He never ceased to urge the Aedui and Boii as to supplies; but the one tribe gave little help because they acted without heartiness, and the other, their resources not being great, inasmuch as they were a small and powerless tribe, speedily consumed what they had. Thanks to the poverty of the Boii, the half-heartedness of the Aedui, and the burning of the barns, the army was beset by very great difficulties as to supplies, to such a degree that for many days together the men had no corn, and satisfied their extreme hunger on cattle which were brought in from the more distant villages; yet there was not a word heard from them that was unworthy of the greatness of the Roman people and of their previous triumphs. Nay, when Caesar addressed each legion one by one during the construction of the works, and declared that he would abandon the siege if they found the scarcity too severe to bear, to a man they begged him not to do so. For many a year, said they, with him as their general, they had served in such sort as never to incur a defeat, nowhere to withdraw without accomplishing their aim; and if they were to relinquish a siege when once begun, they should regard it as a disgrace. It was better to put up with every sort of hardship than not to avenge those citizens of Rome who had died at Cenabum by the treachery of Gauls. They charged their centurions and tribunes with declarations to this effect, to be by them repeated to Caesar.

XVIII. The siege-towers being already brought close up to the wall, Caesar learned from his prisoners that Vercingetorix, his forage exhausted, had moved his camp nearer to Avaricum, and had in person set off, for the purpose of making an ambuscade, to the spot whither he expected our men to come on the following day to find fodder, together with his cavalry and some light-armed men who were trained to fight amongst cavalry. On learning this Caesar started at midnight without noise, and reached the enemy's camp at morning. The latter, who had speedily learnt his coming by aid of their scouts,

concealed their waggons and baggage in the thicker parts of the forest, and marshalled their entire force on lofty and open ground. Hearing which, Caesar ordered the men's kits to be piled together with all speed, and their arms to be got ready for action.

XIX. The hill was one which sloped gently from its foot and on almost every side a dangerous and impassable marsh of not more than fifty feet in breadth surrounded it. Having broken down the bridges, the Gauls held together on this hill in assurance of their position. Arranged state by state, according to their tribes, they occupied every ford and pass of the marsh, their determination being, from their higher position, to overwhelm the Romans while hampered in the mud, should the latter attempt to force a way across the marsh ; in such sort that, if a man looked only at the nearness of their position to the Romans, he would have thought them resolved upon fighting on well-nigh equal terms, but if he perceived the real disadvantages of the conditions, he would have understood that they were merely parading themselves in an idle pretence. To his men, who chafed that their foes could withstand the sight of them with only so small an interval between, and clamoured for the signal of battle, Caesar pointed out what loss and what bloodshed of stout warriors the victory must cost them : "Indeed, when I see you thus resolved to shirk no peril for the sake of my reputation, I ought to be condemned for the foulest wrongdoing if I account not your lives dearer than my own well-being." He consoled his troops in such fashion, and led them back to camp on the same day, and set about providing whatever else concerned the siege of the town.

XX. On his return to his own army, Vercingetorix was accused of treachery on the grounds that he had moved his camp nearer to the Romans ; that he had withdrawn himself with the whole of the cavalry ; that he had left so large a force without any commander ; that the Romans had so opportunely and speedily arrived on his departure. All this could not have occurred by mere chance and without design, it was alleged : Vercingetorix, said they, preferred to keep his sovereignty in Gaul rather by Caesar's gift than by the Gauls' own favour. When thus attacked he said in reply to these charges : "As to the fact that

I moved my camp, it was done through the scarcity of fodder, and you yourselves urged me to do it. As for my drawing nearer to the Romans, I was prevailed upon by the fitness of the new site, seeing that it defends itself by its natural strength. The aid of cavalry ought not to have been wanted by you on marshy ground, while they have been of real service at the spot to which they have gone. It was of purpose that I did not delegate the command to any one when leaving you, lest such person might be led to give battle by the enthusiasm of the multitude; for I saw you were all bent on fighting from very weakness of character, because you could no longer put up with hard work. If it was by chance that the Romans came on the scene, you must thank your good luck; if it was because they were invited by some one's information, you must feel grateful to that man, because you have been able, from a post of vantage, to discern their scanty numbers, and to scorn the courage of these men who did not dare to engage you, but slunk like cowards back to their camp. I seek not from Caesar at the price of treachery a power which I can win by victory, and by a victory which is even now assured to me and to all of us Gauls; nay, I resign my power to you if you think you are conferring upon me honour which is greater than is the safety which you derive from me. And that you may understand that this is said by me with sincerity, give ear to Rome's own soldiers!" He led out some slaves whom he had caught when foraging a few days before and had tortured with starvation and fetters. They had been already instructed beforehand as to what they were to say when questioned. "We are soldiers of the legions," said they. "We left the camp by stealth, driven to it by hunger and privation, to see if we could find corn or cattle in the fields. Our whole host is sore pressed with privations like our own, and there is none whose strength is intact or can bear up against the toils of the siege; wherefore our general has resolved to lead away his army in three days' space if they shall have made no progress in the siege of the town."

"Such," said Vercingetorix, "are the benefits which you receive from me, whom you accuse of treachery! by whose energy, and without loss of your blood, you see that great and victorious army wasted by famine! When with shame it

collects itself from its flight, it is I that have taken measures to prevent any tribe from welcoming it within their borders."

XXI. The whole host shouted applause and in their peculiar fashion clashed their arms, as they are wont to do in the case of one whose words they approve. Vercingetorix was the greatest of generals, they said, and there was no need to doubt his patriotism, nor could the war be managed with more skilful strategy. They resolved that ten thousand men picked from their entire forces should be despatched into the town, and decreed that the well-being of all should not be entrusted to the Bituriges alone, because they saw that all the glory of the victory would rest with them, should they keep possession of the town.

XXII. To the extraordinary valour of our soldiers were opposed contrivances of every sort by the Gauls, for they are a people of remarkable cleverness, and extremely quick to imitate and construct anything which is brought under their notice by any one from time to time. They would divert our siege-hooks by means of nooses, and whenever they had got them caught would haul them into the town by means of windlasses. They would remove our bank from beneath by means of mines, and the more skilfully as there are large mines of iron amongst them, and every variety of mine is well known and habitually employed by them. Moreover they had constructed towers of several storeys at every point along the wall, and these they had covered over with hides. Again, by their ceaseless sallies by day and night, they would set fire to our bank, or would attack our men when busied with their siege-works. By joining the upright beams of their towers they would match the height of our own, just so far as the daily additions to our bank had lifted them, and the open galleries in our mound they would obstruct with beams fired and pointed at the end and with boiling pitch and with boulders of the largest size, and so prevent their approaching the wall.

XXIII. Now every Gallic wall is usually of this fashion. Straight beams all of one piece are laid upon the ground at equal intervals, distant two feet one from another. These are braced together at the inner end and covered with quan-

tities of soil, while the intervening spaces whereof we have spoken are packed along the front with large blocks of stone. When these have been set in place and bound together, a second row is placed on top of them, in such sort that the aforesaid interval is maintained and the beams do not touch, but are separated by similar spaces of two feet, and the several beams, with the several pieces of stonework laid between, are closely held together. In this fashion is the whole work step by step built up, until the wall's full height is attained. Such a construction is not unsightly in appearance and variety, with its alternating timber and stonework which preserve their regular succession in straight lines, while for purposes of use and for the defence of towns it has the greatest fitness; for the stonework is a protection from fire and the woodwork from the ram, as it is braced upon the inner side for distances of forty feet by solid beams, and can neither be broken through nor torn asunder.

XXIV. Although the siege was rendered difficult by such a variety of circumstances, yet our troops, albeit delayed during the whole time by the cold and continuous rains, overcame all these obstacles by dint of ceaseless labour, and constructed within five-and-twenty days a mound three hundred and thirty feet in breadth and eighty feet in height. This being now all but contiguous to the enemy's wall, Caesar, as his manner was, was up all night amongst the works, and kept encouraging his men not to desist from their task for a single moment; when, shortly before the third watch, it was noticed that the mound, which the enemy had fired by means of a mine, was emitting smoke. At the same instant all along the wall rose the battle-cry, and a sally was made from the two gates on either flank of our siege-towers, while others from a distance began to hurl brands and dry faggots down upon the mound from the wall, and kept pouring on to it pitch and anything else whereby fire can be kindled; so that it was scarcely possible to adopt any plan as to whither to hurry first or where first to carry aid. However, as by Caesar's habit there were constantly two legions on guard before the camp, while still greater numbers were engaged upon the works (the time being shared amongst all alike), it was speedily brought about that some should beat back the sallies,

others draw off the siege-towers and make a cut in the mound, while the entire force in the camp should hurry up to put out the flames.

XXV. The rest of the night-time was now spent, but still the fight went on at every point, and the enemy's hopes of victory were constantly renewed, all the more because they saw that the breastworks of the siege-towers had been burnt away, and marked that our men did not readily approach to bring succour now that they were without protection. For their part, fresh men constantly took the place of the weary, and they believed Gaul's whole salvation to be dependent upon that crisis. And while we watched there befell a matter which seemed worthy of record, and which, therefore, we thought should not be omitted. Before one of the gates of the town a Gaul was hurling into the flames, over against a siege-tower of ours, lumps of fat and pitch, which were passed to him from hand to hand. Pierced by a missile on the right side, he fell dead. One of those nearest him stepped over the fallen man and kept on doing the same duty, and was killed in the same way by the blow of an engine. To this second succeeded a third, and to the third a fourth, nor was the post left void by the defenders of the town until the burning mound was extinguished, the enemy cleared away at every point, and the fight ended.

XXVI. Seeing that nothing had proved successful, although they had tried everything, the Gauls on the next day formed the design of breaking out of the town, at the persuasion and bidding of Vercingetorix. By attempting this in the silence of night, they hoped to effect it with no great loss to themselves, because the camp of Vercingetorix was not far away from the town, and the unbroken marsh which lay between hindered the Romans from pursuing. They were already preparing to do it at nightfall, when their matrons suddenly rushed into the open, and throwing themselves with tears at the feet of their kindred besought them with every form of entreaty not to surrender, to their foes and to torture, them and their own children, whom feebleness of nature and strength prevented from taking to flight. But when they saw that their husbands stood firm in their resolve—in extreme peril fear as a rule admits not of compassion—they took to calling aloud and notifying the Romans

of the intended escape ; and the Gauls, led by this alarm to fear that the paths would be seized beforehand by the Roman horsemen, abandoned their plan.

XXVII. On the next day, the siege-tower being brought to the front and the engines which Caesar had resolved to build being put into line, there arose a violent storm. He deemed this time was a fitting one for forming a plan of action, for he marked that the guards were arranged somewhat carelessly upon the wall ; and accordingly he ordered his own men to occupy themselves rather idly with the siege-works, telling them what he wished should be done. The legions were secretly got ready for action within the camp, and Caesar urged them to reap at last the fruits of victory in return for their heavy toil, offering rewards to such as should be first to scale the wall. Then he gave his men the signal, and dashing out unexpectedly on every side they speedily overran the wall.

XXVIII. The enemy, panicstruck by this new development and driven from their wall and towers, drew up in the form of a wedge in the market-square and more open places, in the resolve to fight in regular array if there should be any advance upon them from any quarter ; but when they saw none descend to the level ground, while men were pouring round the whole wall on every hand, they became apprehensive that every prospect of escape would be done away with, and throwing aside their shields they made for the farthest side of the town in one unbroken stampede. A portion of them, crushing one another in the narrow outlet of the gates, was here cut down by the soldiers, while another part which had already got out of the gates was slain by the cavalry. There was not a single Roman who paid heed to the booty ; and thus, being infuriated by the massacre at Cenabum and the toils of the siege, they spared neither those who were worn out with age, nor the women, nor the children. In fine, of the whole number, which was forty thousand or thereabouts, scarcely eight hundred, who had burst out of the town when the war-cry was first heard, made their way safely to Vercingetorix. Vercingetorix received them silently after their escape, when it was now far on in the night. He was afraid that some mutiny might result in the camp from their inrush and from the compassion of his host, so that he stationed

his friends and the notables of the various tribes all along the road for a great distance, and took care to have the men divided and conducted to their kin, in such part of the camp as had originally been allotted to each tribe.

XXIX. On the following day Vercingetorix called an assembly and consoled his men, exhorting them not to be quite cast down in heart nor perturbed by the late disaster. "The Romans have won a victory, not by valour or in open fight, but by a kind of trickery and by their skill in sieges, a matter of which we have no experience. Men who expect the issue of every event in war to be successful make a mistake. It was never my will that Avaricum should be defended, and I have yourselves for my witnesses of this fact. By the shortsightedness of the Bituriges and the excessive indulgence of the rest of you, it has come to pass that this disaster has been sustained, yet I will right speedily repair it by success that shall be greater. Such tribes as are not in accord with the rest of the Gauls, I will win over by my efforts. I will make one the purpose of all Gaul, and against her unanimity not the world itself could make a stand. Indeed, I have all but effected it already. Meanwhile, it is but reasonable that, for the sake of our common well-being, I should obtain from you this much, namely, that you should adopt the plan of erecting fortified camps, in order the more easily to withstand an enemy's sudden onsets."

XXX. This address was not displeasing to the Gauls, particularly because their leader himself had not flagged in courage on sustaining so severe a reverse, or hidden himself in private and avoided the gaze of his host; and they believed him to have the greater foresight and prescience, because, while their fortunes were yet unimpaired, he had voted in the first place for the burning of Avaricum, and next for its evacuation. Accordingly, just as the reverses of other leaders lessen their influence, so in the opposite way the high position of Vercingetorix was daily exalted by the very disaster which had been sustained. At the same time the Gauls gathered hope from his declaration as to winning over the rest of the tribes. At this date, therefore, for the first time, they adopted the habit of fortifying a camp, and so cowed in spirit were these warriors, that, unaccustomed though they were to labour, they

thought it needful to put up with everything that was bidden them.

XXXI. Indeed, Vercingetorix strove courageously, not a whit less than he had undertaken, to win over the other tribes, and he kept on trying them by presents and promises. For this purpose he chose out suitable men, such that each might be able most easily to entrap them either by crafty speeches or on the score of good-fellowship. Such as had escaped from the storming of Avaricum he took pains to have furnished with arms and clothing. At the same time, to recruit his diminished forces, he laid upon the tribes a fixed contingent of men, stating the numbers and the date when he wished them to be brought up to his camp; and he gave instructions that all archers, of whom there was a very large number in Gaul, should be sought out and sent to him. By such measures he soon made good what had been lost at Avaricum. In the meantime Teutomatus son of Ollovico, the king of the Nitiobroges, whose father had been styled a friend by our Senate, made his way to Vercingetorix with a large number of his cavalry and with others whom he had hired out of Aquitania.

XXXII. Caesar made a halt of several days at Avaricum, and, finding there a very large supply of grain and other supplies, refreshed his army after its toils and privations. He was now invited to prosecute the war by the very time of year, for the winter had almost ended, and had made up his mind to march upon the enemy, to see if he could either entice them from the marshes and forests or crush them by blockade, when there came to him some notables of the Aedui as envoys, to beg him to help their tribe at a time of especial need. Matters were in the gravest peril, they said, for two persons were exercising the magistracy, and each of them alleged himself to have been appointed according to law, although from very ancient times it had been customary for magistrates to be appointed only one at a time, and to enjoy the sovereign power for a year only. One of these two was Convictolitavis, a young man of means and rank, and the other was Cotus, a descendant of a very old family, and himself a person of very great influence and wide connections, whose brother Valetiacus had exercised the same office the year before. The whole tribe was in arms, senate

and people were alike divided, and each of the two rivals had his own followers; and if the quarrel were to be fostered any longer, the result would be that one faction in the tribe would come to blows with the other. That this should not occur depended upon Caesar's energy and influence.

XXXIII. Although Caesar deemed it a damaging thing to leave the war and the enemy, yet he was not unaware what serious disasters are wont to arise from quarrels. To prevent from descending to disorder and war a tribe so important and so closely allied with the Roman people, a tribe too which he had personally always aggrandised and honoured in every way, and to prevent the faction which had least confidence in itself from calling in aid from Vercingetorix, he felt that this business must have precedence of all else. According to the laws of the Aedui, such as enjoyed the supreme magistracy were not allowed to leave the land; wherefore, that he might not appear in any way to detract from their rights and laws, he resolved to leave for the Aedui in person, and summoned the entire senate to him at Decetia, together with those between whom the quarrel lay. Thither came almost the whole tribe, and Caesar learnt that one brother had been declared elected by the other, though only a few persons had been secretly assembled, and these at a place and time other than was proper; whereas the laws forbade two men of the same family, if both were alive, to be appointed magistrates, and not only so, but prevented them from belonging even to the senate. He therefore compelled Cotus to resign his authority, and bade Convictolitavis, who had been appointed by the priests according to the custom of the tribe when there is a break in the magistracy, enjoy the official power.

XXXIV. After pronouncing this judgment, he begged the Aedui to forget their quarrels and feud, and omitting all things else, to give their attention to the war and look for such rewards from him, when Gaul was thoroughly subdued, as they had deserved; he asked them to send to him with speed all their cavalry and ten thousand infantry, which he might place in garrison-posts for the protection of his supplies. He now divided his army into two parts: four legions he entrusted to Labienus to be led against the Senones and Parisii, and himself

led the remaining six along the river Elaver against the Arverni and towards the town of Gergovia. Of the cavalry he gave one-half to Labienus, leaving the other half for himself. On learning this Vercingetorix broke down all the bridges on the river, and commenced to march on its other side.

XXXV. The two armies being in sight of each other and pitching camp almost opposite to each other, and there having been stationed scouts to prevent the Romans from building a bridge and so putting their troops across, Caesar's case was one of great difficulty, lest he should be stopped by the river for the greater part of the summer; for the Elaver is not usually to be crossed by a ford before autumn. Accordingly, to prevent this occurring, he pitched his camp in a thickly-wooded locality opposite one of the bridges which Vercingetorix had caused to be broken down, and there he remained on the next day with two legions in concealment. The rest of his forces with all the baggage he sent on as was usual, drawing off a few cohorts so that the number of legions might seem to be unchanged. They were bidden advance as far as possible; and when he had made a conjecture from the time of day that they had now gone into camp, he began to reconstruct the bridge with the original piles, whereof the lower portions remained intact. The work was quickly done, and the legions led across the river; whereupon he selected a suitable spot for a camp, and recalled the rest of his troops. Vercingetorix, on learning the fact, pushed on in front by forced marches, so as not to be forced to give battle against his will.

XXXVI. From this spot Caesar made his way to Gergovia on the fifth day, on which there occurred a petty cavalry skirmish. Having examined the situation of the town, which lay on the top of a very lofty hill, and to which every approach was difficult, he gave up hope of storming it, and resolved that nothing should be done in regard to besieging it until he had made arrangements for his supplies of corn. Now Vercingetorix had pitched his camp close to the town, and stationed the contingent of each tribe by itself at short distances all about him, and as he had seized every elevation on the ridge, wherever there was a view downward, he presented a formidable spectacle. Every day at dawn he bade come to him such notables of the tribes as

he had selected for his council of war, if it seemed that any matter ought to be discussed or taken in hand; and he let pass as a rule not a single day without testing what was the spirit and courage of each of his own men in skirmishes of cavalry interspersed with archers. Opposite the town, and at the very foot of the height, was a hill admirably fortified and scarped on every side. If our men could occupy this, it was clear that they would cut off the enemy from a great part of their water supply, and from free foraging. However, the spot was occupied by them with a garrison, but that none too strong. Nevertheless Caesar, marching out of his camp in the dead of night, and driving down the garrison before help could come from the town, got possession of the spot, and there stationed two legions. He also led a double trench, each trench twelve feet in width, from the main camp to this smaller one, so that men might pass to and fro, even one by one, without danger from a sudden onset of the enemy.

XXXVII. While these matters were in progress about Gergovia, Convictolitavis the Aeduan, to whom, as we have mentioned, the magistracy was adjudged by Caesar, was tempted by the Arverni with bribes. Thereupon he held a conference with certain young men, chief of whom were Litaviccus and his brothers, youths who were born of a very powerful family. With them he shared the bribe-money, and urged them to bear in mind that they were free and born to rule. "It is the single tribe of the Aedui," said he, "which delays the certain triumph of Gaul, for by its influence the others are restrained, and if it be brought over the Romans will have no chance of keeping their footing in Gaul. I have been treated with some kindness by Caesar, but only so far as I maintained before him a just claim; and I attach greater weight to our national freedom. For why should we Aedui go to Caesar as the umpire in the matter of our rights and laws, rather than the Romans should come to us Aedui?" The youths were quickly won over by the magistrate's address and by the bribe, and on their even promising to be the leaders in his plan, a method of effecting it was sought for, inasmuch as they were convinced that their tribe could not be induced to take up war without an adequate cause. It was resolved that Litaviccus should be put in command of the ten

thousand men which were being sent to Caesar for the war, and should undertake to lead them on their march, while his brothers should go on before to Caesar; and they determined in what fashion the rest of the matter was to be managed.

XXXVIII. Litaviccus took over the army, and when he was about thirty miles away from Gergovia he suddenly convened his men, and asked with tears, "Whither are we going, soldiers? All our cavalry, all our chieftains have perished, and Eporedorix and Viridomarus, leading men of our tribe, have been charged with treason and put to death by the Romans, their case unheard. Learn the fact from those who have escaped from the actual massacre, for I, whose brothers and kinsmen have all been slain, am debarred by grief from declaring what has been done." There were brought forward men whom he had instructed as to what he wished should be said, and they related to the host the same story as Litaviccus had told. "All the Aeduan cavalry have been cut to pieces because they were alleged to have had conference with the Arverni, but we concealed ourselves amongst the crowd of soldiery, and so escaped from the midst of the carnage." The Aedui broke into a shout and adjured Litaviccus to take measures for their safety. Whereupon he: "As though indeed it were a matter for consideration, and were not a matter of necessity for us to hurry to Gergovia and unite with the Arverni! Surely we do not doubt that the Romans, after this foul crime has been committed, are even now hurrying to massacre us also. Therefore, if there is any spirit in us, let us avenge the fate of those who have so foully perished, and slay these brigands." He pointed to the Roman citizens who were accompanying him under the guarantee of his protection. He at once looted a great quantity of grain and stores, and brutally tortured and slew the citizens themselves. He then sent messages throughout the whole tribe of the Aedui, and stirred them by the same false story as to the massacre of the cavalry and notables; and urged them to avenge their wrongs in like fashion as he himself had avenged his own.

XXXIX. Eporedorix the Aeduan, a young man born in the highest rank, and a person of very great authority at home, and together with him Viridomarus, a man of equal age and influence, though of inferior birth, whom Caesar had advanced from a

humble position to the highest dignity when recommended to him by Divitiacus, had assembled amongst the contingent of cavalry, being summoned by Caesar by name. They had a feud as to the headship, and in the late quarrel of the magistrates they had fought with all their resources, the one for Convictolitavis, the other for Cotus. Of the two, Eporedorix learnt the design of Litaviccus, and revealed the matter to Caesar about midnight. He begged him not to allow the tribe to fall away from the friendship of the Roman people, because of the evil designs of some youths. Yet this would happen, he foresaw, if so many thousand warriors should unite with the enemy; for their kinsmen could not disregard their safety, nor could the tribe account it of small moment.

XL. On this news Caesar was seized with grave anxiety, for he had habitually shown special indulgence to the tribe of the Aedui; but he suffered no hesitation to intervene. He drew out of camp four legions in light marching order and the whole of his cavalry, nor was there time at such a crisis to reduce the size of the camp, for the business appeared to depend upon despatch. He left his lieutenant, Gaius Fabius, to protect the camp with two legions, but on ordering Litaviccus' brothers to be arrested, he found that they had made their escape to the enemy a little while before. He now asked his men not to be vexed by the toil of their march at so critical a time. All were most enthusiastic, and having advanced five-and-twenty miles he sighted the Aeduan column; whereupon he sent out his cavalry and thus delayed and hindered their march, laying injunctions upon all his men to kill no one. Eporedorix and Viridomarus, the men whom the Aedui believed to have been murdered, he ordered to mingle with the cavalry, and speak to their countrymen. The Aedui recognised them, and, divining Litaviccus' trick, commenced to stretch forth their hands, to make the sign of surrender, to throw aside their arms and beg for quarter. Litaviccus, with his own retainers, for whom in Gallic custom it is a crime to desert their lords even in the last extremity, made his escape to Gergovia.

XLI. Caesar now sent messengers to the tribe of the Aedui to inform them that it was by his favour that these men were saved, whom by right of war he might have put to

death ; and allowing his army three hours for repose, broke up camp for Gergovia. About halfway on the march some horsemen sent off by Fabius revealed to him the peril in which matters were at Gergovia ; for they told him that the camp was besieged by an enormous force, fresh men continually relieving the wearied and wearing out our troops by ceaseless exertion, for owing to the extent of the camp the same men had to remain upon the ramparts without intermission. Many had been wounded by the numbers of arrows and missiles of every kind, though the siege-engines had been of great service in withstanding these. At the retirement of the enemy, Fabius was blocking up the other gates, leaving only two, and was furnishing the rampart with breastworks and getting ready for the next day and for the like event. On hearing this, Caesar made his way into the camp before sunrise, thanks to the very great enthusiasm of his men.

XLII. While these matters were in progress in the neighbourhood of Gergovia, the Aedui, on receiving the very first message from Litaviccus, left themselves no time to verify it. Some were prompted by greed, others by anger and recklessness, which last is especially inherent in men of this race, so that they take idle hearsay for ascertained fact. They looted the property of the Roman citizens, made a massacre of some, and dragged others into slavery. Convictolitavis abetted their course of action when its direction was now determined, and roused the common folk to fury, so that they might be ashamed to return to their senses after the commission of their crime. One Marcus Aristius, a tribune of soldiers, who was travelling to his legion, they brought out of the town of Cabillonum on parole, and compelled such as had settled there for the purposes of trade to do the same; then attacking them forthwith when on the road they stripped them of all their baggage, and when they showed resistance, kept them under siege for a day and a night. After many had fallen on both sides, they collected a still larger force of armed men.

XLIII. In the meantime was brought the news that all their troops were detained in Caesar's power. Thereupon they rushed to Aristius and declared that it was not by resolve of the state that anything had been done. They decreed an

enquiry into the looting of property, confiscated the belongings of Litaviccus and his brothers, and sent envoys to Caesar to clear themselves. All this they did in order to get back their own men; but they were tainted with their misdeed and ensnared by the profits of the property which they had looted, for the affair touched many of them; so that being panic-stricken with the dread of chastisement, they set about forming in secret plans for war, and made overtures to other tribes by means of embassies. Now although Caesar was aware of this, yet he addressed their envoys with the utmost mildness: he formed no unfavourable opinion, he said, of the tribe at large because of the witlessness and excitability of the common folk, nor did he lessen his goodwill towards the Aedui. However, foreseeing a yet greater rising in Gaul, and to prevent his being surrounded by all the tribes, he began to consider how he might get away from Gergovia and again unite his entire force, so that his departure, arising as it did from the fear of revolts, should not seem to resemble a retreat.

XLIV. While he debated the question, there seemed to occur an opportunity of gaining success. For having gone to the lesser camp to examine the siege-works, he noticed that a hill, which was occupied by the enemy, was now stripped of warriors, whereas on previous days it could scarcely be seen for the numbers upon it. In astonishment he enquired the reason from deserters, of whom a large number flocked to him daily. It was agreed by them all, as indeed Caesar himself had already discovered by means of scouts, that the ridge of the height was almost level, but that the particular spot where there was an approach to the other side of the town was narrow and covered with wood. The Gauls were greatly concerned for this spot, and had no other conviction than that, as one hill had been already seized by the Romans, if they lost the second, they would be found to be all but surrounded and cut off from all egress and means of foraging; so that they had all been summoned by Vercingetorix to fortify this spot.

XLV. On learning this, Caesar despatched several squadrons of horse after midnight, and ordered them to roam in all directions in somewhat disorderly fashion. At dawn he bade a large number of pack-horses and mules to be brought out of camp,

their pack-saddles to be taken off them, and the muleteers, with cavalry-helmets in the guise and pretence of horsemen, to ride round along the hills. To these he added a few of the regular cavalry, with orders to ride further afield to make a display; and he bade the whole number make for the same quarter by a long circuit. All this was observed in the distance from the town, as there was a view from Gergovia over the camp, but at so great a distance it was not possible for the truth to be discovered. Caesar sent one legion along the same ridge, and when it had advanced some little way he halted it on lower ground and concealed it in the woods. The suspicions of the Gauls were accentuated, and their forces were all transferred to that point to defend it. On seeing the enemy's camp deserted, Caesar transferred troops in small bodies from the larger camp to the lesser, with accoutrements disguised and standards hidden to prevent their being observed from the town, and instructed the lieutenants whom he had appointed to command the several legions as to what he desired to be done. Above all he warned them to keep their men in hand, and prevent their going too far in their ardour for battle or their hope of plunder. He pointed out what disadvantages there were in the awkwardness of the ground, saying that it could be discounted only by speed. The *coup* was one which depended on opportunity rather than on fighting. Having put these points before them he sounded the advance, and at the same instant sent the Aedui up by another ascent on the right.

XLVI. In a direct line, and supposing there intervened no windings, the town wall lay twelve hundred paces away from the level plain and the commencement of the ascent, but whatever deviations came to be added thereto in making the ascent more easy, increased the length of the road. At about the middle of the hillside and all along it, according as the nature of the hill admitted, the Gauls had run a six-foot wall of large stones to break any attack of ours, and while all the space below it was left unoccupied, they had covered the upper portion of the slope as far as the town wall with densely packed camps. When the advance was sounded our men speedily reached the outwork, crossed it, and got possession of three camps; and such was their rapidity in seizing these that the king of the

Nitiobroges, Teutomatus, was taken by surprise in his hut, just as he had lain down at noon, and, with the upper portion of his person unclad and his horse wounded, barely saved himself from the hands of the soldiers who were looting.

XLVII. Having attained what he had purposed in his mind, Caesar ordered the retreat to be sounded and at once caused to halt the ensigns of the Tenth legion, with which he was. However, the men of the other legions did not hear the bugle-call, because quite a considerable ravine intervened, but the tribunes of soldiers and the lieutenants endeavoured to keep them back, as they had been instructed to do by Caesar. But the men were elated with the prospect of a speedy victory and by the enemy's flight and their successful battles of former days; they deemed nothing so difficult for them that they could not attain it by sheer valour, and they did not stay their pursuit until they were close to the wall and gates of the town. Then at last from every part of the town arose cries, and those who were at some distance off, panicstruck by the sudden uproar, and fancying the enemy to be already within the gates, burst out of the town. The matrons commenced to throw down from the wall articles of dress and silver, and leaning over with bared bosoms and out stretched hands begged the Romans to spare them and not to vent their fury on even women and children, as they had done at Avaricum. Some even let themselves down by the hands of others from the wall and gave themselves up to the soldiery. Lucius Fabius, a centurion of the Eighth, who, it was ascertained, had on that day declared amongst his men that he was stimulated by the rewards won at Avaricum and would allow none to scale the wall before himself, got hold of three men of his company, and was by them lifted up and climbed the wall, himself in turn taking hold of them one by one and hauling them on to the wall.

XLVIII. Meantime those who, as we have said above, had assembled at the other side of the town to construct defences, roused at first by the outcry which they heard, and subsequently by repeated messages to the effect that the town was in the hands of the Romans, sent forward their horsemen first and hastened thither in a big stampede. Each as he arrived took his stand under the wall and swelled the numbers of his own

folk who were engaged in the fight. When a large number of them had now come together the matrons, who but a little while before were stretching out their hands to the Romans from the wall, began to call upon their kindred, and in Gallic fashion to show their dishevelled hair and to bring out their babes before their warriors' eyes. Neither in point of position nor of numbers was the fight a fair one for the Romans, and at the same time, exhausted as they were by their running and by the duration of the conflict, they did not easily withstand troops which were fresh and unspent.

XLIX. When Caesar saw that the fight was on unfavourable ground, and that the enemy's numbers were increasing, he became alarmed for his men. Accordingly he sent up Titus Sextius, his lieutenant, whom he had left behind to guard the smaller camp, to lead his cohorts out of camp with despatch and halt them at the foot of the hill on the enemy's right, in order to deter the Gauls from following up their pursuit freely, should he see our men dislodged from their position. Caesar in person with his legion moved forward a little from the spot where he had halted, and waited for the upshot of the engagement.

L. While the fight was going on very briskly at close quarters, the enemy confident in their position and numbers and our men trusting to their valour, suddenly the Aedui, whom Caesar had despatched by another ascent on the right for the purpose of spreading out the enemy's force, were sighted on the exposed flank of our men. From the similarity of their accoutrement they alarmed our troops intensely; and albeit they were remarked to have the right shoulder uncovered, this being the sign usually adopted by friendly tribes, yet the soldiery fancied this very thing was contrived by the enemy in order to deceive them. About the same time the centurion Lucius Fabius, and those who had scaled the wall with him, were surrounded, slain, and thrown headlong from the wall. Marcus Petronius, a centurion of the same legion, after endeavouring to cut down the gates, was overwhelmed by numbers. Despairing of his own safety, after receiving many wounds, he said to the men of his company who had followed him: "Since I cannot save myself along with you, I will at any rate look to

your lives, whom I have led into peril because I was captivated by the desire for fame. Do you look to yourselves, for I give you the opportunity." At the same instant he dashed into the enemy's midst, slew two men, and drove off the rest for a little space from the gate. When his men sought to aid him, he said: "It is in vain that you seek to save my life, for even now my life-blood and my strength fail me. Wherefore begone, while there is opportunity, and get you back to the legion." So after a brief space he fell fighting, but was the salvation of his men.

LI. Hard pressed on all hands, and with the loss of six-and-forty centurions, our men were dislodged from their position, but the Tenth legion, which had halted on somewhat more level ground to support the rest, hindered the Gauls who were pursuing somewhat rashly. The cohorts of the Thirteenth legion, which had been brought up from the lesser camp, and with Titus Sextius, their lieutenant, had occupied higher ground, in turn covered the Tenth. As soon as ever the legions reached the plain, they turned their standards against the enemy and halted, and thereupon Vercingetorix led back his men from the foot of the hill within their lines. On this day there were lost little less than seven hundred men.

LII. On the next day Caesar summoned an assembly, and rebuked the rashness and greed of the troops, in that they had determined for themselves how far it seemed good that they should advance, and what it seemed good that they should do, and had not halted when the signal for retiring was given, nor could be kept back by the tribunes of soldiers and the lieutenants. He pointed out what was the effect of the difficult character of the ground, a fact which he had himself realised at Avaricum when, albeit he had caught his enemy in the toils without leaders or cavalry, he had abandoned an assured victory, lest in a struggle there should befall even a trifling loss in consequence of the difficulties of the ground. Just as he admired the great courage of his men, whom no camp's fortifications, no mountain's height, no wall of any town could check, so he blamed their insubordination and presumption in believing that they knew more than did their general about victory and the result of an encounter. "I look," he said, "for restraint and coolness in my men no less than for valour and undaunted spirit."

LIII. After making a speech of this sort, he encouraged his men towards the close of his address, that they might not be dispirited on this account or put down to the enemy's bravery what had been brought about by difficulties of ground; and still having the same views in regard to departure as he had had before, he led the legions out of camp and drew up in line of battle at a suitable spot. Vercingetorix none the more came down into the level ground: there occurred a slight and successful cavalry-engagement, and then Caesar led back his army into camp. Having done the same also on the next day, he felt that he had done enough to decrease the boastfulness of the Gauls and to keep up the spirits of his men, and moved his camp towards the lands of the Aedui; and as the enemy did not even now pursue him, three days later he repaired the bridges on the Elaver and put his army across the river.

LIV. Being here summoned by the Aeduans Viridomarus and Eporedorix, he discovered that Litaviccus with all the horsemen had gone off to stir up the Aedui, and that it was imperative for Viridomarus and Eporedorix themselves to go on ahead in order to keep the tribe to its loyalty. Now although Caesar had already in many matters perceived the treachery of the Aedui, and believed that the tribe's defection was being hastened by these men's departure, yet he decided that they were not to be kept back, lest he might be thought himself to be putting an insult upon them or to afford them some suspicion that he was afraid. On their leaving him, he briefly put before them his kindnesses to the Aedui: he pointed out in what condition and what degradation he had found them, how they were shut up within their towns, robbed of their lands, stripped of all their resources, how tribute was laid upon them, and hostages wrung from them with the extremest insults; also to what greatness and power he had advanced them, so that not only had they recovered their old position but seemed to have outrun the honours and influence that had belonged to them at any other time Such parting words he gave them, and so sent them from him.

LV. Noviodunum was an Aeduan town situated in a convenient position on the banks of the Liger. To this place Caesar had collected all his Gallic hostages, his grain-supplies, the public moneys, and a large part of his own and his army's baggage, and

hither he had sent a great number of horses which had been bought up in Italy and Spain for the purposes of this war. Hither came Eporedorix and Viridomarus, and ascertained the disposition of their tribe. They learnt that Litaviccus had been welcomed by the Aedui at Bibracte, the town of greatest weight amongst them; that Convictolitavis the magistrate, together with a great part of the senate, had met him there; and that envoys had been despatched to Vercingetorix to make peace and alliance with him on behalf of the state. They felt that such an opportunity was not to be neglected: accordingly they cut down the garrison of Noviodunum and such as had assembled there for purposes of trade; they divided amongst themselves the money and horses; they had the hostages from the different states escorted to the magistrate at Bibracte; and as they judged that the town could not be held by them, they burnt it, lest it should be of any use to the Romans. Of the supplies of grain, they carried off in vessels as much as they could in the hurry, and spoiled the rest by fire and water. They then began in person to get together troops from the neighbouring districts, to set guard-posts and pickets on the banks of the Liger, and to parade their cavalry in all directions for the purpose of striking the Romans with panic, to see if they could thus cut them off from their supplies or even drive them out into the Province under stress of privations. In their hopes of this they were considerably aided by the fact that the Liger had been swollen by the snows, so that it seemed altogether impossible that it should be crossed by a ford.

LVI. On learning this Caesar decided that he must hurry, even if some risk had to be run in completing the bridges, to the end that he might engage before larger forces had been mustered to the spot. For from changing his plans and altering his route in the direction of the Province, as at the moment every one believed he must of necessity do, he was prevented both by the disgrace and dishonour of such a course and by the fact that Mount Cevenna lay in the way, and by the difficulties of the roads, but most of all by the fact that he was exceedingly anxious for Labienus, who was separated from him, and for the legions which he had despatched with Labienus. Accordingly, by making very lengthy marches by day and night, contrary to

the expectation of every one, he arrived at the Liger. By help of his cavalry he found a ford that was serviceable in view of the urgency of the case, though only his men's arms and shoulders could be clear of the water to carry their accoutrements. He arranged his horsemen to break the violence of the current, and as the enemy were dismayed at the first glance, he led his army across in safety; and finding corn and abundance of cattle in the country, he satisfied his men with these supplies and began to make his march for the Senones.

LVII. While such matters were in progress with Caesar, Labienus had started for Lutetia with four legions, leaving at Agedincum the reinforcements which had lately come up from Italy to act as a guard for the baggage. Lutetia is a town of the Parisii, lying on an island of the river Sequana. When his arrival was discovered by the enemy, a large force gathered from the neighbouring tribes, and the chief command was delegated to Camulogenus the Aulercan, a man who was called to this distinction on the score of his unique knowledge of military matters, albeit wellnigh worn out with age. He remarked that there was a continuous marsh which opened into the Sequana and rendered the whole country largely impassable; and here he encamped and set himself to prevent our men from crossing.

LVIII. Labienus at first endeavoured to bring up mantlets and fill up the morass with fascines and earth, and so to construct a road; but finding this attended with too great difficulty, he left his camp in silence in the third watch and made his way to Metiosedum by the route by which he had advanced. This is a town of the Senones, situated on an island of the Sequana, as we have remarked of Lutetia a little above. Having seized some fifty vessels, he quickly joined them side by side, and threw his troops into them. The townsmen, of whom a great portion had been called away to war, were panicstruck at the novelty of the proceeding, and Labienus got possession of the town without a struggle. Repairing the bridge, which the enemy had broken down in the preceding days, he put his army across and commenced to march down the stream towards Lutetia. On learning the event from those who had escaped from Metiosedum, the enemy ordered Lutetia to be fired and the bridges of the town to be broken down, while they themselves moved from the marsh

towards the banks of the Sequana and pitched a camp in face of Labienus opposite to Lutetia.

LIX. The news that Caesar had retreated from Gergovia was already being spread, and rumours of the revolt of the Aedui and the success of the Gallic rising were already being brought in, and the Gauls in their conferences began to assert roundly that Caesar, debarred from his line of march and from the Liger, and driven thereto by lack of supplies, had directed his march to the Province. Moreover, hearing of the revolt of the Aedui, the Bellovaci, who were already disloyal on their own initiative, commenced to get together their armed bands and openly to prepare for war. Thereupon Labienus, in so serious a change of affairs, felt that he must adopt a far-different plan from that which he had previously had in mind, and no longer deliberated how to make conquests or harass the enemy by fighting, but only how to withdraw his army in safety to Agedincum. For on the one side the Bellovaci, the tribe which has the greatest reputation for bravery in Gaul, were pressing upon him, and the other was occupied by Camulogenus with an army well prepared and equipped; and finally, a very wide river kept the legions sundered from their supports and their baggage. With so great difficulties suddenly thrown in his way, he saw that it was to a dauntless spirit that he must look for aid.

LX. Towards evening he called a council of war, and after exhorting his officers to carry out whatever he ordered with care and energy, he allotted the vessels which he had brought down stream from Metiosedum to Roman knights, one to each, and bade them, when the first watch was ended, move in silence four miles down the river and there wait for him. To guard the camp he left five cohorts which he considered least reliable in point of fighting; and he bade the five remaining cohorts of the same legion start up-stream after midnight with all the baggage and amid great uproar. He also collected some small boats, and these, propelled with a great noise of oars, he sent in the same direction. He himself left quietly a little later with three legions and made for the spot to which he had ordered the vessels to be put in.

LXI. When the spot was reached, the enemy's scouts, stationed as they were at every point of the river, were over-

borne by our men, being off their guard because a violent storm had suddenly got up. The infantry and cavalry were rapidly put across by the exertions of the Roman knights whom Labienus had appointed to this duty. Almost at one and the same instant just about dawn intelligence reached the enemy that there was an unwonted uproar in the Roman camp, that a large body of men was marching up-stream and that the sound of oars was audible in the same direction, and that troops were being ferried across in boats a little lower down. On hearing these facts, fancying the legions to be crossing in three places, and that all were panicstricken by the revolt of the Aedui and were preparing for flight, they divided their own forces also into three divisions; for leaving a guard-post opposite the Roman camp, and sending a small body towards Metiosedum, to advance just so far as the vessels had gone, they led the remainder of their troops against Labienus.

LXII. At dawn all our men had been put across and the enemy's line came into view. Labienus urged his troops to keep a recollection of their old valour and their great victories, and to fancy that Caesar himself, under whose generalship they had often defeated the enemy, was present and supporting them, and thereupon sounded the charge. At the first encounter the enemy were routed on the right wing, where the Seventh legion had taken its stand, and were put to flight. On the left, the place which the Twelfth legion occupied, although the front ranks of the foe had fallen pierced with weapons, yet the remainder stood their ground most courageously and no one showed a sign of flight. Camulogenus, the enemy's general, supported his men in person and encouraged them. Whether the result would be victory was even now uncertain when the tribunes of the Seventh legion, on news reaching them of what was occurring on the left wing, displayed that legion in the enemy's rear and charged. Yet not even at that crisis did any one quit his position, but all were surrounded and cut to pieces. Camulogenus met the same fate. Those also who had been left as a guard-post over against Labienus' camp, on hearing that the engagement had begun, advanced to support their fellow-countrymen and occupied a hill, but they could not withstand the charge of our victorious troops. Thus mingled with their fleeing comrades, those who

were not sheltered by the forests and hills were cut down by our cavalry. This business ended, Labienus returned to Agedincum, where had been left the baggage of the whole force. Thence he made his way on the third day with all his men to Caesar.

LXIII. When the desertion of the Aedui became known, the war spread further. Embassies were sent round in every direction, and strove, so far as was in their power by help of influence and power and bribes, to win over the tribes. Gaining possession of the hostages whom Caesar had placed with them, the Aedui terrorised the waverers by the punishment held over these. They begged Vercingetorix to come to them, and to join them in a plan for the conduct of the war. This point gained, they insisted that the chief command should be transferred to themselves, and when the matter was turned to a quarrel, there was proclaimed a conference of all the Gauls at Bibracte. Thither they came in numbers from every quarter; the point was referred to the votes of the whole number, and to a man they all approved Vercingetorix as their general. From this conference the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri were absent: the Remi and Lingones, because they adhered to their friendship with the Romans, and the Treveri, because they were too far away, and were being harassed by the Germans, which was the reason why they kept aloof during the whole of the war, and sent aid to neither party. The Aedui bore with deep vexation that they should be ousted from the headship; they grumbled at the change in their fortunes, and missed Caesar's indulgence towards themselves; yet now that they had taken up war, they dared not separate their own policy from that of the rest. Albeit against their will, Eporedorix and Viridomarus, who were young warriors of limitless ambition, obeyed the orders of Vercingetorix.

LXIV. Vercingetorix demanded hostages from the remaining tribes, and appointed a day for their appearance. He bade all their horse, fifteen thousand in number, collect to him with speed. He would be satisfied, he said, with what infantry he had previously had, and would not tempt fortune or engage in a regular battle; but as he had horse in abundance, to prevent the Romans from collecting grain and fodder was a thing very

easy to do, if but the Gauls would, with unruffled feelings, spoil their own crops of grain and fire their houses, for by such sacrifice of their private means they saw themselves winning power and liberty for all time. These arrangements made, he demanded ten thousand infantry from the Aedui and Segusiavi, who lie nearest to the Province, and added thereto eight hundred horse. In command he placed a brother of Eporedorix, and bade him attack the Allobroges. In the opposite quarter he despatched the Gabali and the neighbouring cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii, and similarly despatched the Ruteni and Cadurci to waste the lands of the Arecomican Volcae. Yet not the less did he make overtures to the Allobroges by secret messages and by embassies, for he hoped that their feelings had not yet quieted down after their previous war. To their leading men he promised gold, and to the tribe the dominion over the whole of the Province.

LXV. To meet all these contingencies there had been provided an army of occupation of two and twenty cohorts, which had been raised in the Province itself, and were now directed against the enemy at every point by the lieutenant Lucius Caesar. The Helvii, engaging in battle with their neighbours on their own initiative, were repulsed, and when Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, son of Caburus, the chief of the tribe, and many others had been slain, they were shut up within their towns and walls. The Allobroges stationed pickets in numbers all along the Rhone, and guarded their borders with much care and energy. Caesar, inasmuch as he was aware that the enemy outnumbered him in point of cavalry, and it was not possible for him to be relieved in any way from the Province and Italy, now that all the roads were blocked, sent across the Rhine to Germany to the tribes which he had reduced to peace in previous years, and summoned from them cavalry and light-armed infantry accustomed to fight amongst horsemen. On their arrival, as the horses which they were using were of little service, he took their horses from the tribunes of soldiers and other Roman knights and the superannuated volunteers, and distributed these amongst the Germans.

LXVI. Meantime, while this was going on, the forces raised by the enemy from the Arverni, and the cavalry, which had

been demanded of Gaul at large, assembled. Now that a formidable force of them had been got together, and when Caesar was marching upon the Sequani through the outlying lands of the Lingones, to the end that support might the more easily be sent to the Province, Vercingetorix halted in three camps at about ten miles from the Romans, and summoning his captains of horse to a council of war, pointed out that now the hour of victory was come. "The Romans are fleeing for the Province and quitting Gaul. To me this is enough, so far as concerns the securing of our immediate liberty, but as regards our peace and repose for the future little progress is being made; for when they have gathered larger forces, they will come back to us, and make no end of their campaigning. Wherefore let us attack them while they are on the march and hampered. If the infantry bring aid to their comrades, and halt while doing so, they cannot accomplish their march; and if, as I rather believe will happen, they abandon their baggage and look to their own safety only, they will be deprived both of the enjoyment of necessaries and of their prestige as well. For as to the enemy's horse, we need not doubt that not one of them dare so much as move out of the line of march. And that you may do your part with yet greater courage, I will hold in readiness my whole force before the camps, and so be a menace to your foes." The knights shouted in approval that it ought to be affirmed by the most solemn of oaths that the man who should not have ridden twice through the enemy's column should be welcomed under no roof, nor have any right to approach his children, his parents, or his wife.

LXVII. The idea was approved and all bound themselves by an oath, and on the following day the cavalry divided into three divisions. Two bodies showed themselves on our two flanks, while the third commenced to obstruct our march in front. On news of this being brought to him, Caesar gave orders for his own cavalry also to divide into three divisions and advance against the enemy. The fight raged on every hand simultaneously, while the column of march halted, and the baggage was collected within the line of legions. If at any point our men were observed to be in difficulties or to be hard pressed, Caesar would give orders for the men to form in line of battle

and advance in that direction, and this fact checked the enemy from pursuing while it encouraged our cavalry with the assurance of assistance. At last the German horsemen seized the top of a hill on the right flank, and dislodged the enemy from the position. As they fled as far as the river where Vercingetorix had encamped with the infantry, the Germans pursued them and slew very many. On observing the fact, the remainder grew apprehensive that they might be surrounded and took to flight. Everywhere there was a slaughter. Three of the noblest of the Aedui were taken and brought to Caesar—namely, Cotus, the captain of horse, who had had the quarrel with Convictolitavis at the last election; Cavarillus, who had taken command of the infantry after the secession of Litaviccus; and Eporedorix, under whose leadership the Aedui had waged war with the Sequani before Caesar's coming.

LXVIII. When the whole of his cavalry had been routed, Vercingetorix drew off his forces again, just as he had stationed them in front of the camps, and at once commenced to march for Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii, ordering his baggage to be brought out of camp without delay and to follow him Caesar conveyed the Roman baggage to the nearest hill, and after leaving two legions to guard it, followed as far as the hour of the day allowed. After cutting to pieces about three thousand of the enemy in the rear of their column, he pitched camp near Alesia on the next day. Having reconnoitred the position of the town, while the enemy were utterly cowed because of their defeat in point of cavalry, in which arm of their forces they had especial confidence, he roused his men to the task and began to draw lines of blockade around the town.

LXIX. The town of Alesia itself lay on the top of a hill in a position of considerable elevation, so that it seemed impossible for it to be taken except by blockade. On two sides two streams washed the base of the hill, while before the town stretched a level space some three miles in length. On every other side hills of an equal altitude surrounded the town, with a moderate interval between. Beneath the wall that part of the hill which looked to the east was entirely occupied by the Gallic forces, and they had run along their front a ditch and a wall six feet in height. The circuit of the works which were raised by

the Romans comprised eleven miles. Camps were pitched at convenient points, and here were erected three-and-twenty redoubts, in which during the daytime were stationed pickets, so that no sally might be made of a sudden, while at night also they were occupied by watches and strong bodies of guards.

LXX. On the commencement of the works there occurred a cavalry-battle in the level ground which we have stated above to have lain between the hills, and to stretch to a length of three miles. Both sides fought with the greatest obstinacy. To aid our men, who were in difficulties, Caesar sent up his Germans and formed his legions in front of the camp, so that no entrance might be made by the enemy's infantry of a sudden. By the additional protection of the legions our men's courage was increased, and the enemy, when put to flight, hampered themselves by their very numbers and were crowded together at the too narrow gates which had been left in the wall. The Germans pursued them vigorously right up to their earthworks. A great slaughter took place; while some even left their horses and strove to cross the ditch and scale the wall. Caesar ordered the legions, which he had drawn up before the rampart of his camp, to advance for a small distance. No less therefore were the Gauls alarmed who were within the earthworks; they fancied an attack was coming upon them forthwith, and sounded to arms, while some in their panic forced their way into the town. Whereupon Vercingetorix ordered the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left unoccupied. After killing many and capturing a number of horses the Germans retired.

LXXI. Before their works could be completed by the Romans, Vercingetorix formed the resolution of sending away all his cavalry by night. As they were departing he commissioned them to go to their several tribes and get together for the war all whose age allowed them to bear arms. He set before them his kindnesses to themselves and begged them to have regard for his safety, and not to abandon him to the enemy to be tortured, seeing that he had so well deserved on the score of the freedom of all. "But," he pointed out, "if you are remiss, eighty thousand picked men will die with me. From a calculation which has been made, I have grain for barely thirty days, but I can hold out a little longer by using it sparingly." After giving them

these injunctions, he sent away his horsemen silently in the second watch, by a road where our works were incomplete. He ordered all the grain to be brought to him, and ordained the penalty of death for such as should have failed to obey. The cattle, of which a great number had been driven into the town by the Mandubii, he distributed to them man by man, but the grain he set himself to measure out sparingly and gradually. He withdrew into the town all the troops which he had stationed outside it. In such fashion he made himself ready to wait for the aid of Gaul and to carry on the war.

LXXII. When Caesar had learnt these matters from deserters and prisoners, he set afoot siege-works of the following sort. He constructed a twenty-foot ditch with perpendicular sides in such fashion that its bottom was just as wide as its edges were distant apart at the top. All the remaining works he threw back to a distance of four hundred paces from the ditch, and this with the design that, as he had of necessity taken in so large a space, and the entire length of the works could not easily be surrounded with a ring of his troops, neither might a swarm of the enemy make a rush upon the lines unexpectedly by night, nor might they be able by day to hurl missiles at our men while busied with the works. Leaving then so much space between, he next constructed two ditches fifteen feet in breadth, and both of the same depth ; the inner of these, which was on level and low-lying ground, he filled with water drawn from a stream. Behind them he erected a twelve-foot rampart and palisade and added thereto a breastwork with battlements, with heavy spiked timbers projecting where the breastworks and the rampart met, to check an enemy's attempts to climb the bank. He also set towers round along the entire work, so as to stand eighty feet apart.

LXXIII. It was needful at one and the same time to collect timber, to gather supplies, and to construct these enormous works, while our troops, which had to move further and further from the camp, were reduced in numbers. Not seldom also the Gauls attempted to attack our works and to make sallies in full force from the town by several gates at once. Accordingly Caesar felt that additions must again be made to the aforesaid works, that the lines might be capable of being defended by a smaller number of troops. Trunks of trees with very stout

boughs were therefore felled, and their ends stripped of bark and sharpened. Continuous ditches of five feet in depth were then constructed, and into these the tree-trunks were set and fastened securely at the bottom so that they should not be torn up, while they stood out from their branches upwards. Rows of five in each ditch were fastened one to another and intertwined, and any one who got into the ditch impaled himself on their exceedingly sharp branches. These the men styled grave-stones. In front of these were dug pits three feet in depth in cross rows arranged in the form of a quincunx, their slopes growing gradually narrower towards the bottom. Into these were sunk smooth stakes of the thickness of one's thigh, sharpened and burnt at the top, so as to project not more than four finger-breadths from the soil. At the same time, to make them strong and firm, in every case a foot's depth from the bottom was rammed down with earth, while the rest of the pit was covered over with branches and brushwood to conceal the trap. Of this sort there were constructed eight rows distant three feet from each other. From its resemblance to that flower, the men styled this a lily. In front of these were buried with their entire length in the ground blocks of wood a foot long with iron hooks set in them, and were strewn everywhere at short intervals. These they styled spurs.

LXXIV. These things completed, Caesar, in following the most level ground possible in view of the nature of the spot, had embraced a space of fourteen miles. He now constructed equal defences of a like sort on the opposite side to the above in order to keep off a foe from without, that those who guarded the lines could not be surrounded even by large numbers, if such an event should follow upon the departure of Vercingetorix' cavalry; and lest he should be forced at great risk to leave his camp, he gave orders that all should collect and have by them fodder and grain for thirty days.

LXXV. While this was going on around Alesia, the Gauls proclaimed a conference of their leading men, and resolved that it was not needful to call together, as Vercingetorix had proposed, the whole of those who could bear arms; but that there should be demanded from each chief a definite contingent from his tribe, lest there should be so great and overwhelming

a number that it would be impossible either to control or distinguish their own followers or to take measures for supplying them with food. They demanded from the Aedui and their dependents the Segusiavi, Ambivareti, and Brannovician Aulerci a contingent of thirty-five thousand; a like number from the Arverni, conjointly with the Eleuteti, Cadurci, Gabali, and Vellavii, who are habitually under the headship of the Arverni. From the Sequani, Senones, Bituriges, Santoni, Ruteni, and Carnutes, contingents of twelve thousand in each case; from the Bellovaci, ten thousand; eight thousand each from the Pictones, Turoni, Parisii, and Helvetii; six each from the Andes, Ambiani, Mediomatrici, Petrocorii, Nervii, and Morini; from the Nitiobroges five thousand, and as many from the Cenomanian Aulerci; from the Atrebates four thousand; from the Veliocassi the same number; three thousand each from the Lemovices and Eburovician Aulerci; two thousand each from the Raurici and Boii; and one contingent of thirty thousand in all from the whole mass of tribes which border upon the Ocean and in the Gallic style are termed Aremorican, in their number being the Curiosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Lexobii, and Venelli. Of these tribes the Bellovaci failed to make up their contingent, alleging that they were going to conduct their war with the Romans on their own account and according to their own judgment, and were not going to obey any man's orders. However, when petitioned by Commius, they sent with the rest two thousand men in view of his friendship with them.

LXXVI. As we have before related, Caesar had made use of the loyal and helpful services of this man Commius in Britain in the previous years; and for these same services he had given orders that Commius' tribe should be exempt from tribute, had restored to it its own customs and laws, and had made over the Morini to Commius himself. Yet so thorough was the accord of united Gaul in the reassertion of her liberty and the recovery of her old-time reputation for prowess, that men were swayed neither by kindnesses nor by the recollection of friendship, but threw themselves without exception into the war with all their energies and all their resources. There were got together eight thousand horsemen and two hundred and fifty thousand infantry or thereabouts. These forces were reviewed in the lands of the

Aedui, their numbers were told over, and officers appointed. The chief command was delegated to Commius the Atrebatian, to Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Aeduans, and to Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, a cousin of Vercingetorix. To these were attached picked men from the various tribes, in accord with whose advice the war should be carried on. Eager and full of confidence all started for Alesia; and not one deemed it possible that the mere sight of so great a host could be withstood, especially in a double struggle, for from the town fighting would be carried on by means of a sally, while from the further side there would appear such forces of horse and foot.

LXXVII. Meantime those who were blockaded in Alesia, though the date upon which they had looked forward to their kinsmen's succour was now past, and all their supplies were exhausted, knew not what was on foot amongst the Aedui. They accordingly convened a council of war and debated as to the issue of their fortunes. Various opinions were expressed, some of which proposed surrender and some proposed a sally while their strength sufficed; but it seems to me that Critognatus' speech should not be overlooked for its exceptional and abominable cruelty. This man, sprung of high rank amongst the Arverni, and accounted a man of great authority, spoke as follows: "I am going to say nothing as to the opinion of those who call most disgraceful slavishness by the name of surrender. I do not deem that such men should be accounted citizens or admitted to our council. Let my business be with them that recommend a sally, for in their counsel there seems to linger in the unanimous judgment of all of you the recollection of our ancient valour; yet it is not valour but mere weakness of mind on your part not to be able to endure privation for a little while, and there are more easily to be found men to offer themselves voluntarily to death than men to endure pain with patience. Nevertheless that is the proposal which I should myself recommend—such power has the authority of its proposers with me—if I saw that there followed nothing worse than the loss of our lives; but in forming our plans let us have an eye to all Gaul, which we have roused to our succour. What, think you, will be the feelings of our relatives and kinsmen, if eighty thousand men shall have been massacred at one spot, and they be them-

selves constrained to fight almost over the very corpses of the dead? Do not rob of your succour those who for your safety have scorned their own risk; do not by your folly and rashness, or, on the other hand, by your weakness of heart, bring to the earth the whole of Gaul and subject her to slavery for ever. Do you doubt their loyalty and resolution because they have not arrived at the appointed day? Surely not. What then? Think you that the Romans are wearying themselves day by day with those outer works for the sake of amusement? If you cannot be assured by messages from our friends, because every approach to us is now blocked up, use these Romans as witnesses that the coming of our friends draws near; for it is because they are panicstricken with the fear of it, that the Romans busy themselves day and night in their labours. What then is my plan? To do what our forefathers did in the war against the Cimbri and Teutones, which was by no means of such importance; for when they were driven within their towns and were constrained by just such need as ours, they sustained life upon the bodies of those who through their years seemed unserviceable for war, and never surrendered to the enemy. And had we no precedent for such a deed, yet for the sake of freedom I should hold that a most glorious one was being established and handed down to posterity. For what was there of similarity in that war and this? When Gaul was ravaged the Cimbri, after having brought indeed a grievous calamity upon our lands, yet departed at last and sought other regions, and left to us our rights and laws and lands and liberties; but what else do these Romans aim at, what else is their wish, than prompted as they are by envy, to settle amongst the fields and communities of men whom they know to be illustrious by repute and powerful in war, and to bring upon them the yoke of an unending bondage. On no other terms have they waged any of their wars; and if you know not what is being done amongst distant peoples, look but to this neighbouring land of Gaul which has been reduced to a province, its rights and laws subverted, and is now made obedient to the axes and crushed beneath a perpetual slavery."

LXXVIII. After these opinions had been pronounced, the Gauls resolved that all who were unfit for war, whether in point of strength or years, should quit the town, and that they should

try everything else before resorting to Critognatus' suggestion; that however they should have recourse to that design of his, if the situation compelled them thereto and succour was delayed, rather than submit to conditions of surrender and peace. The Mandubii, who had harboured them in the town, were compelled to quit it with their wives and little ones. Approaching the fortifications of the Romans, they besought them with tears and prayers of every kind to take them into slavery and succour them with food; but Caesar placed sentinels upon the rampart and prevented them from being admitted.

LXXIX. Meantime Commius and the other chieftains to whom had been committed the supreme authority, made their way with all their forces to the vicinity of Alesia, and seizing a hill on the outer side not more than a mile from our lines, there encamped. The next day they drew out of camp their cavalry, and occupied the whole of the lowlands which we have said stretched some three miles in length. Their infantry, withdrawn a little distance from that spot, they stationed on higher ground. From the town of Alesia there was a view down to the plain, and on seeing these succours the garrison assembled. They congratulated one another, and the hearts of all were raised to joy. Accordingly they drew out their forces and encamped in front of the town. The nearest ditch they covered with hurdles and filled up with earth, and made ready for a sally and for any contingency.

LXXX. Caesar arranged his whole army on both sides of the works so that, if occasion arose, each should know and maintain his own place, and he ordered his cavalry to be led out of camp and to engage. From all the redoubts which occupied the top of the ridge all round the town there was a view downwards, and all our men anxiously awaited the issue of the fight. The Gauls had scattered a few archers and light-armed skirmishers amongst their horsemen, to come up to the help of their own side when retreating and to withstand the charge of our cavalry, and a considerable number were unexpectedly wounded by these and quitted the fight. As the Gauls became confident that their men were getting the upper hand in the battle and saw our men hampered by numbers, both those of them who were hemmed in within the Roman lines and those who had come to render aid

encouraged on every hand their fellow-countrymen with cries and yells. As the fight went on under the eyes of all, and nothing that was well or ill done could be kept out of sight, the thirst for distinction and the fear of disgrace roused both sides to valour. After the battle had been going on with undecided result from midday wellnigh to sunset, the Germans, massing their squadrons at one point, charged the enemy and drove them back. When these were put to flight, the archers were surrounded and cut down. Similarly, at other points, our men followed right up to their camps the enemy as they were falling back, and gave them no opportunity of rallying. Those who had moved forward out of Alesia withdrew again into the town sadly, wellnigh hopeless of success.

LXXXI. One day passed, and within that time was prepared a large number of hurdles, scaling-ladders, and hooks. The Gauls, quitting their camp in silence at midnight, approached the siege-lines in the plain. Suddenly a shout was raised, in order that by this token those who were shut up within the town might learn the approach of the other Gauls, and thereupon they set themselves to cast down hurdles, to drive our men from their rampart with slings and arrows and stones, and to do everything else that attends an attack. At the same instant, when their war-cry had been heard, Vercingetorix gave his men the signal by the trumpet, and led them out of the town. Our men hurried to the works according as his place had been appointed for each on the preceding days. With slings, bolases, and stakes, which they had piled all along the works, and with bullets they drove off the Gauls. All means of seeing being prevented by the darkness, numbers of wounds were received on both sides, while quantities of missiles were hurled by the engines. Marcus Antonius and Gaius Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom this part of the lines had been allotted to defend, kept sending up men draughted from the more distant redoubts to the support of our men, wherever they learnt them to be hard put to it.

LXXXII. So long as the Gauls were at some distance from the lines, they made the better progress by reason of the vast numbers of their missiles; but when they got nearer, they either impaled themselves unwittingly upon the spurs, or fell into the pits and were transfixed, or were pierced by the

siege-pikes hurled from the rampart and towers, and so perished. After many wounds had been received on either side but no part of the works had been broken through, as dawn was now approaching, they became apprehensive that they might be surrounded on their exposed flank by a sally from the camp on higher ground, and therefore withdrew to their own men. Those within, while they brought up the materials prepared by Vercingetorix for his sally and filled up the ditches in front, spent too much time over the accomplishment of that purpose and learnt that their comrades had fallen back before they themselves got near the Roman lines. Accordingly they returned to their town with their purpose still unaccomplished.

LXXXIII. Having now twice been repulsed with heavy loss, the Gauls took counsel as to what they should do. They summoned to them men who knew the locality, and from them obtained a knowledge of the position and defences of the camp on higher ground. To the north was a hill, which, because of the extent of its circuit, our men had been unable to include within their works; so that they had necessarily constructed this camp upon ground that was rather unsuitable and of a gentle slope. This camp was occupied by the lieutenants Gaius Antistius Reginus and Gaius Caninius Rebilus with two legions. Having made themselves acquainted with the locality by means of scouts, the enemy's leaders selected sixty thousand out of the whole number of those tribes which enjoyed the greatest reputation for bravery. They decided secretly one with another what it was resolved should be done, and how: they fixed the time of the attack when it should be high noon. In command of these forces they put Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one of the four commanders-in-chief, and himself a kinsman of Vercingetorix. Leaving camp in the first watch and having pretty well completed his march about day-dawn, he concealed his troops behind a hill and bade them refresh themselves after their labours of the night. When at length noon was seen to be drawing on, he hurried towards the camp which we have before mentioned; and at the same time the Gaulish cavalry began to advance upon the lines in the plain and their remaining forces to show themselves in front of their camp.

LXXXIV. Sighting his countrymen from the crest of Alesia,

Vercingetorix left the town. He brought up hurdles, poles, pent-houses, siege-hooks, and all the other materials which he had made ready for the purpose of his sally. At one and the same time there was fighting at every point and every resource was tried, and there was a rush towards that part of the lines which seemed to be least strong. The Roman forces were distracted by the extent of their lines and could not easily meet the enemy at many points at once. Moreover, the battle-cries which rose behind the backs of our men as they fought went far to frighten them, because they saw that their own peril was involved in the well-being of others; for as a general rule, it is the danger which is not present which more keenly alarms men's minds.

LXXXV. Caesar found a suitable spot and kept himself informed of what was going on at every point, sending up succours to those who were in difficulties. It occurred to the thoughts of each party that this was the crisis when it behoved them to fight their best. The Gauls despaired of all salvation, unless they could break through our lines, while the Romans looked for an end to all their labours, if they could but hold their own. Especially was there heavy work at the upper lines to which, as we have said, Vercassivellaunus had been sent, for the unfavourable slope of the position in a downward direction lent considerable weight to the attack. Some hurled missiles, while others formed a tortoise and advanced to the attack, fresh men taking the place of the weary turn by turn. Earth was piled against the lines by all at once and gave the Gauls a means of climbing up, while it also buried the defences which the Romans had concealed in the ground. Indeed at this crisis our men had neither weapons nor strength sufficient.

LXXXVI. Learning this, Caesar despatched Labienus with six cohorts to the aid of the troops who were in difficulties; and ordered him, if he could not make a stand, to draw off his cohorts and make a sally, but not to do this unless of necessity. In person he visited the remaining troops, exhorting them not to give way beneath their toils. "On this day, on this instant, depends the fruit of all our earlier battles," he said. The Gauls within the lines, despairing of taking our positions in the plain because of the size of our works there, now attacked spots which

were steep in ascent, and brought up thither the materials which they had prepared. With their host of missiles they drove the defenders from the towers, they filled the ditches with earth and hurdles, and tore down the rampart and breastwork with siege-hooks.

LXXXVII. At first Caesar sent to the rescue the young Brutus with some cohorts, and subsequently the lieutenant Gaius Fabius with some others. Last of all, as the fight was raging with great fury, he brought up fresh troops in person to support his men. The battle being now restored and the enemy beaten off, he hurried to the spot whither he had sent Labienus. He drew four cohorts from the nearest redoubt, and bade part of the cavalry go with him, part ride round the outer lines, and attack the enemy in the rear. Labienus, seeing that neither ramparts nor ditches could check the enemy's onset, massed the forty cohorts which had been drawn from the nearest guard-posts, and were now by chance put in his way, and informed Caesar by messengers of what he deemed it necessary to do. Caesar hastened up to share in the fight.

LXXXVIII. His arrival being known by the colour of his dress, the uniform which he was accustomed to wear in action, and the troops of cavalry and the cohorts, which he had ordered to follow him, being now in the enemy's sight, as these descending hollows were in view from the higher ground, the Gauls engaged. On either side rose the war-cry, and it was taken up again by cheers from our rampart and the whole line of works. Our men threw aside their pikes and fought with their swords, when suddenly the cavalry were descried in the rear, and other cohorts drew near. The enemy took to flight, and the cavalry met them as they fled. The slaughter was great. Sedulius, the general and chieftain of the Lemovices, was slain, and the Arvernian Vercassivellaunus was taken alive while fleeing. Seventy-four military ensigns were brought to Caesar, and few out of all the enemy's number got back to camp unharmed. Watching from the town the slaughter and rout of their countrymen, the Gauls despaired of safety and drew off their forces from the lines; and when the fact was heard there was an instant flight of the Gauls from their camp. Indeed, had not our men been wearied out by continually sending supports to

one another, and by the strain of a whole day's fighting, the enemy's entire force might have been annihilated. Cavalry were despatched at midnight, and came up with their rear. Large numbers were captured or slain, while the remnant disbanded to their tribes after their escape.

LXXXIX. On the following day Vercingetorix summoned a council, and declared that he had not undertaken that war because of his own needs, but for the freedom of all. As he must yield to fortune, he offered himself to the Gauls for either alternative, whether they chose to make amends to the Romans by his death, or to give him up alive. Envoys were sent to Caesar on the question. The latter bade all arms be given up, and the leaders brought to him. He took a seat upon the siege-works in front of the camp, and thither the chiefs were brought to him. Vercingetorix was delivered up, and all weapons laid down. Reserving the Aedui and Arverni, to see if he could by their means win back those tribes, Caesar distributed to his entire army one apiece out of the remaining captives as booty.

XC. This done, he left for the country of the Aedui, and received the submission of the tribe. Envoys, sent thither by the Arverni, promised that they would do whatever he commanded, and he accordingly demanded a large number of hostages. His legions he sent into winter quarters. Of the prisoners he gave back to the Aedui and Arverni some twenty thousand. He ordered Titus Labienus with two legions and cavalry to start for the land of the Sequani, and appointed Marcus Sempronius Rutilus to aid him. The lieutenant Gaius Fabius and Lucius Minucius Basilus he stationed amongst the Remi with two legions, lest that tribe should suffer any loss from their neighbours the Bellovaci. He sent Gaius Antistius Reginus to the Ambivareti, Titus Sextius to the Bituriges, Gaius Caninius Rebilus to the Ruteni, with one legion apiece. Quintus Tullius Cicero and Publius Sulpicius he stationed at Cabillonum and Matisco amongst the Aedui near the Arar for the purpose of collecting supplies. He decided to winter in person at Bibracte. When these events were learnt in Rome from Caesar's despatches, there was decreed in his honour a thanksgiving of twenty days' duration.

PRINTED AT THE BURLINGTON PRESS, CAMBRIDGE.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 18 July, 2018